# Bullenrise Lot 33&34 (1012 BB)

## Project Specification

117 Arthurs Point Road, Arthurs Point, Queenstown, New Zealand
Project Ref: j24179
Date: 04 November 2026

PROJECT SPECIFICATION Works, materials and workmanship for construction in accordance with the accompanying drawings.

Spec Version ID: 383912-464682
Document authenticity may be verified at masterspec.co.nz/verify/383912-464682
Prepared using Masterspec software

© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# TABLE OF CONTENTS


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1220 | PROJECT | 4 |
| 1232 | INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS | 6 |
| 1232S1 | EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULE SECTIONS | 8 |
| 1233 | REFERENCED DOCUMENTS | 9 |
| 1234 | DOCUMENTATION | 10 |
| 1237 | WARRANTIES | 15 |
| 1237S1 | SCHEDULE OF WARRANTIES | 18 |
| 1238 | AS BUILT DOCUMENTATION | 19 |
| 1238S1 | SCHEDULE OF AS BUILT DOCUMENTATION | 20 |
| 1240 | ESTABLISHMENT | 21 |
| 1250 | TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES | 22 |
| 1260 | PROJECT MANAGEMENT | 26 |
| 1270 | CONSTRUCTION | 30 |
| 2210 | PREPARATION & GROUNDWORK | 40 |
| 2310 | FOUNDATIONS | 44 |
| 2362 | FOUNDATION WALLS | 46 |
| 3101 | CONCRETE WORK - BASIC | 51 |
| 3155 | RAFT FLOOR SYSTEM | 57 |
| 3410 | STRUCTURAL STEEL | 62 |
| 3820 | CARPENTRY | 70 |
| 4131A | ARDEX DAMP-PROOF MEMBRANES | 74 |
| 4161MP | MASONS UNDERLAYS, DPM & DPC | 79 |
| 4231HA | JAMES HARDIE AXON™ PANEL CLADDING | 86 |
| 4239JH | JAMES HARDIE® SOFFITS | 92 |
| 4241RI | ROOFING INDUSTRIES PROFILED METAL CLADDING | 96 |
| 4311RI | ROOFING INDUSTRIES PROFILED METAL ROOFING | 100 |
| 4521 | ALUMINIUM WINDOWS AND DOORS | 105 |
| 4553PD | PARKWOOD EXTERIOR DOORS | 112 |
| 4555 | GARAGE DOORS | 116 |
| 4610 | GLAZING RESIDENTIAL | 118 |
| 4710EI | ELIMENT GLASSWOOL THERMAL & ACOUSTIC INSULATION | 122 |
| 4710P | PINK® BATTS® THERMAL & ACOUSTIC INSULATION | 128 |
| 5113 | PLASTERBOARD LININGS | 131 |




© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5171RI | RCS INTEGRA LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE INTERTENANCY SYSTEM | 137 |
| 5430 | WOOD BASED SHEET FLOORS | 141 |
| 6122A | ARDEX FLOOR SUBSTRATE PREPARATION | 145 |
| 6211 | WALL TILING SYSTEMS | 148 |
| 6221A | ARDEX FLOOR TILING SOLUTIONS | 153 |
| 6411 | VINYL SURFACING | 159 |
| 6511 | CARPETING | 163 |
| 6700 | PAINTING GENERAL | 167 |
| 7120 | HOT & COLD WATER SYSTEM | 173 |
| 7150 | SANITARY FIXTURES, TAPWARE & ACCESSORIES | 180 |
| 7352 | TYPE 1 DOMESTIC SMOKE ALARM SYSTEMS | 183 |
| 7411RI | ROOFING INDUSTRIES METAL RAINWATER SYSTEMS | 187 |
| 7420 | SANITARY SYSTEMS | 191 |
| 7430 | DRAINAGE | 193 |
| 7513 | CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEMS | 199 |
| 7612 | RESIDENTIAL EXTRACT SYSTEMS | 202 |
| 7701 | ELECTRICAL BASIC | 205 |
| 8110 | RETAINING WALLS | 216 |




© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1220 PROJECT

## 1 GENERAL

This general section describes the project including:

- A description of the work
- Design construction safety
- Principal's Health & Safety matters
- Site description, features and restrictions
- Design parameters for design by contractor
- Archaeological discovery

1.1 READ ALL SECTIONS TOGETHER

Read all general sections together with all other sections.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF THE WORK

Construction of two two-storey townhouses with attached garages. Units separated by intertenancy firewalls.

1.3 RESTRICTED BUILDING WORK

This project includes Restricted Building Work.

### Design Construction Safety

1.4 DESIGN CONSTRUCTION SAFETY

The project designers are unaware of unusual or atypical features, which a reasonably experienced contractor may not be aware of, that may present a hazard or risk during a typical construction process. The Contractor is still required to undertake its own assessment, to determine if they consider there are any further safety matters and provide for these in carrying out the construction of the work.

### Principal's Health & Safety Matters

1.5 PRINCIPAL'S SITE HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN

Obtain a copy of the principal's site health and safety plan.

### Site

1.6 SITE

The site consists of: A steep slope to the north of the property - to be retained
As shown on drawing: 101

1.7 LEGAL DESCRIPTION

The site of the works, the street address and the legal description are shown on the drawings.

### Site environment - Durability

1.8 EXPOSURE ZONE

The exposure zone is to NZS 3604, Section 4 Durability, 4.2 Exposure zones and NZBC E2/AS1.

The site zone is: B

### Site environment - Wind

1.9 WIND DESIGN PARAMETERS - NON SPECIFIC DESIGN

The design wind pressures are to NZS 3604, Table 5.4 Determination of wind zone, up to and including Extra High Wind Zone.

Building wind zone HIGH (refer to NZS 3604, table 5.4)



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Site environment - Seismic**

1.10 EARTHQUAKE ZONE - NON SPECIFIC DESIGN

The zone is to NZS 3604, Section 5 Bracing design, 5.3 Earthquake bracing demand.

The earthquake zone 3
is:

**Archaeological discovery**



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS

## 1 GENERAL

This general section relates to definitions and interpretation that are used in this specification.

**Definitions**

1.1 DEFINITIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| Hold point: | A stage of the construction where the contract administrator and any other nominated person requires notice to be given that particular work is to be carried out. Work may not proceed on that particular part until the contract administrator and any other nominated person has advised that work can continue. A notice period of 2 Working Days is required unless stated otherwise. |
| Notification point: | A stage of the construction where the contract administrator and any other nominated person requires notice to be given that particular work is to be carried out. Work may continue and the contract administrator and any other nominated person may choose whether or not they wish to witness the particular work being carried out. A notice period of 2 Working Days is required unless stated otherwise. |
| Product: | A thing or substance produced by natural process or manufacture. |
| Proprietary: | Identifiable by naming the manufacturer, supplier, installer, trade name, brand name, catalogue or reference number. |
| Provide and fix: | "Provide" or "fix" or "supply" or "fix" if used separately mean provide and fix unless explicitly stated otherwise. |
| Required: | Required by the documents, the New Zealand Building Code or by a statutory authority. |
| Review: | Review by the contract administrator and other consultants is for general compliance only. Review does not remove the need for the contractor to comply with the stated requirements, details and specifications of the manufacturers and suppliers of individual components, materials and finishes. Neither can the review be construed as authorising departures from the contract documents. |
| Working day: | Working day means a calendar day other than any Saturday, Sunday, public holiday or any day falling within the period from 24 December to 5 January, both days inclusive, irrespective of the days on which work is actually carried out. |
| Workplace: | Workplace means the place where work is being carried out, or is customarily carried out, for a business or undertaking including any place where a worker goes, or is likely to be, while at work (under Health and Safety at Work Act 2015). |

1.2 PERSONNEL

Principal: The person defined as "Principal" in the conditions of contract.

Contractor: The person contracted by the principal to carry out the contract.

Contract administrator: The person appointed by the principal to administer the contract on the principal's behalf. Where no person has been appointed by the principal, it means the principal or the principal's representative.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are used throughout the specification:

| | |
|---|---|
| AAMA | American Architectural Manufacturers Association |
| AS | Australian Standard |
| AS/NZS | Joint Australian/New Zealand Standard |
| ASTM | American Society for Testing and Materials |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| AWCINZ | Association of Wall and Ceiling Industries of New Zealand Inc. |
| BCA | Building Consent Authority |
| BPIR | Building Product Information Requirements |
| BPIS | Building Product Information Sheet |
| BPS | Building Product Specifications |
| BRANZ | Building Research Association of New Zealand |
| BS | British Standard |
| COP | Code of practice |
| CSIRO | Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation |
| HERA | Heavy Engineering Research Association |
| LBP | Licensed Building Practitioner |
| MBIE | Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment |
| MPNZA | Master Painters New Zealand Association Inc |
| NZBC | New Zealand Building Code |
| NZS | New Zealand Standard |
| NZS/AS | Joint New Zealand/Australian Standard |
| NZTA | New Zealand Transport Agency |
| NUO | Network Utility Operator |
| OSH | Occupational Safety and Health |
| PCBU | Person Conducting a Business or Undertaking (under Health and Safety at Work Act 2015) |
| RBW | Restricted Building Work |
| SARNZ | Scaffolding and Rigging New Zealand Inc |
| SED | Specific Engineering Design |
| TA | Territorial Authority |
| TNZ | Transit New Zealand<br>(Transit New Zealand is now New Zealand Transport Agency NZTA - some specifications are still prefixed TNZ) |

1.4 DEFINED WORDS

Words defined in the conditions of contract, New Zealand Standards, or other reference documents, to have the same interpretation and meaning when used in their lower case, title case or upper case form in the specification text.

1.5 WORDS IMPORTING PLURAL AND SINGULAR

Where the context requires, words importing singular only, also include plural and vice versa.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1232S1 EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULE SECTIONS

## 1 GENERAL

This general section provides an explanation of schedule sections and their relationship to general sections and work sections. Specific schedule sections contained within this specification are also identified.

### 1.1 EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULE SECTIONS

A schedule section identifies work sections that contain common requirements, as identified in the title of the schedule section. For example 1235S1 SCHEDULE OF SHOP DRAWINGS identifies work sections that have requirements for shop drawings. Details of the requirements are contained in the identified work sections with additional requirements contained in the general section 1235 SHOP DRAWINGS.

Some schedule sections are identified by the 4 digit CBI (Co-ordinated Building Information) number of the general section that they relate to, followed by the letter "S" followed by a numeral (1-9). The numeral allows for multiple schedule sections to be associated with the same general section.

Other schedule sections that do not share a common CBI number with a general section, have their own unique 4 digit CBI number, followed by the letter "S" followed by a numeral. These schedule sections contain additional subject content relating to the schedules and the identified work sections.

### 1.2 SCHEDULE SECTIONS

The following Schedule sections are contained within the specification:

1237S1 Schedule of Warranties
1238S1 Schedule of As Built Documentation



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

## 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

Throughout this specification, reference is made to various New Zealand Building Code Compliance Documents (NZBC __), acceptable solutions (__ AS_) and verification methods (__ VM_) for criteria and/or methods used to establish compliance with the New Zealand Building Code.

Reference is also made to various standards produced by Standards New Zealand (NZS, AS/NZS, NZS/AS), overseas standards and to listed Acts, Regulations and various industry codes of practice and practice guides. The latest edition (including amendments and provisional editions) at the date of this specification applies unless stated otherwise.

It is the responsibility of the contractor to be familiar with the materials and expert in the techniques quoted in these publications.

Documents cited both directly and within other cited publications are deemed to form part of this specification. However, this specification takes precedence in the event of it being at variance with the cited documents.

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Documents referred to in the GENERAL sections are:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC F5/AS1 | Construction and demolition hazards |
| AS/NZS 1170.2:2011 | Structural design actions - Wind actions |
| NZS 1170.5 | Structural design actions - Earthquake actions - New Zealand |
| AS/NZS 3012 | Electrical installations - Construction and demolition sites |
| NZS 3109 | Concrete construction |
| NZS 3114 | Specification for concrete surface finishes |
| NZS 3602 | Timber and wood-based products for use in building |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 4210 | Masonry construction: Materials and workmanship |
| NZS 4781 | Code of Practice for Safety in Welding and Cutting |
| AS/NZS 5131 | Structural steelwork - Fabrication and erection |
| NZS 6803 | Acoustics - Construction Noise |

Building Act 2004
Building Regulations 1992
Health and Safety at Work Act 2015
Health and Safety at Work (General Risk and Workplace Management) Regulations 2016
Health and Safety at Work (Hazardous Substances) Regulations 2017
Health and Safety in Employment Regulations 1995
New Zealand Building Code
Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014
Resource Management Act 1991
Smoke-free Environments Act 1990

| | |
|---|---|
| WorkSafe | Guidelines for the provision of facilities and general safety in the construction industry |
| WorkSafe | Good Practice Guidelines - Excavation Safety |
| WorkSafe | Scaffolding in New Zealand - Good Practice Guidelines |
| WorkSafe | Managing Work Site Traffic - Good Practice Guidelines |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1234 DOCUMENTATION

## 1 GENERAL

This general section relates to documentation required by the Territorial Authority / Building Consent Authority for compliance with the New Zealand Building Code. It also includes documentation relating to:

- Substitutions
- Manufacturers' documents
- Branded work sections
- Care of construction documents
- Confidentiality of documents
- Receipt of construction documents

**Building Consent Authority documentation**

1.1 BUILDING CONSENT

Obtain the original building consent forms and documents from the owner and keep them on site, preserve the condition of consent forms and documents. Liaise with the building consent authority for all notices to be given and all inspections required during construction to ensure compliance. Return the consent form and documents to the owner on completion.

1.2 BUILDING CONSENT COMPLIANCE

It is an offence under the Building Act 2004

- to carry out any work not in accordance with the building consent.
- to carry out Restricted Building Work by anyone other than a Licensed Building Practitioner licensed for that type of work.

The resolution of matters concerning building code compliance to be referred to the contract administrator for a direction and then if required to the BCA for consent.

Where any alteration is requested by the territorial authority or any other authority, do not undertake such alteration until the matter has been referred to the contract administrator for direction.

1.3 PROJECT PERSONNEL

Provide names and contact details of the contractor's key personnel and tradespersons who are involved with the project. Review the list once a month and reissue it if changes have been made.

**Licensed Building Practitioner documentation**

1.4 LICENSED BUILDING PRACTITIONERS

Provide LBP details. Provide names, LBP numbers, areas of practice and contact information. Provide this information to the BCA before commencing work on the Restricted Building Work in the form required by the BCA. Advise the BCA of any change to an LBP previously advised.

Include the following as applicable

- Site LBP
- Carpenter
- Foundations 1 Concrete foundation walls and concrete slab-on-ground constructor
- Foundations 2 Concrete or timber pile foundations constructor
- Bricklaying and block laying 1 Brick / masonry veneer
- Bricklaying and block laying 2 Structural masonry - Bricklayer / Blocklayer
- Roofing 1 Concrete / clay tile roofer
- Roofing 2 Profiled metal roofer and/or wall cladding installer
- Roofing 3 Metal tile roofer
- Roofing 4 Membrane roofer
- Roofing 5 Torch on membrane roofer
- Roofing 6 Liquid membrane roofer
- Roofing 7 Shingle / slate roofer
- External plastering 1 Solid plasterer
- External plastering 2 Proprietary Plaster Cladding Systems (PPCS) plasterer


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Also provide names and contact details of the following

- Registered drainlayer
- Registered plumber
- Registered gasfitter
- Registered electrician

1.5 RECORD OF WORK

Where Restricted Building Work is carried out by a LBP, on completion provide a Record of Work. Provide copies to both the BCA and the Contract Administrator.

**Compliance information**

1.6 DOCUMENTATION REQUIRED FOR CODE COMPLIANCE

Information may be required either as a condition of the contract documents or as a condition of the building consent. It may include the following:

- Applicators approval certificate from the manufacturer / supplier
- Manufacturer's / supplier's warranty
- Installer / applicator's warranty
- Producer Statement (PS1) - Design
- Producer Statement (PS3) - Construction from the applicator / installer
- Producer Statement (PS4) - Construction review from an acceptable suitably qualified person

Refer to the general sections for the requirements for compliance information to be provided by the contractor.

Refer to the building consent for the requirements for compliance information to be provided by the contractor.

Obtain required documents from the relevant parties for delivery to the contract administrator after the final inspection has been carried out by the BCA.

1.7 PRODUCER STATEMENTS

When producer statements verifying construction are required, provide copies to both the Building Consent Authority and the Contract Administrator. Provide producer statements in the form required by the BCA.

**Residential building contract**

1.8 CHECKLIST

If requested provide evidence of the prescribed checklist given to the residential client.

1.9 DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

If requested provide evidence of the disclosure statement given to the residential client.

1.10 BUILDING CONTRACT

If requested provide evidence of the written building contract that the residential customer has signed.

1.11 DOCUMENTATION REQUIRED ON COMPLETION

As soon as practicable after completion of the building work, provide in writing the following information and documentation to the client and the relevant territorial authority.

Information and documentation relating to:

- The identity of the building contractor and the subcontractors who carried out the work.
- Maintenance requirements for any products incorporated in the building.

If applicable also provide any guarantee or insurance obtained by the building contractor in relation to the building work.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Substitutions**

1.12 ACCEPTABLE PRODUCT/MATERIAL SUPPLIERS

Where a product or material supplier is named in SELECTIONS, the product/material must be provided by the named supplier. Where more than one named supplier, any one of the named suppliers will be acceptable.

1.13 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified products and systems listed in a section unless specified otherwise. If a product is not available then immediately contact the contract administrator for direction.

1.14 PROPOSED SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitution of products or systems contained within branded work sections is not allowed. The contractor may propose substitutions to products within non branded work sections, when the contractor has determined that the proposed substitution is an alternative to the specified product. The Contract administrator is not bound to accept any substitutions. Submit a draft proposal detailing the substitution to the contract administrator before proceeding with full notification.

1.15 NOTIFICATION OF SUBSTITUTIONS

Notify the contract administrator of proposed substitution of specified products. Notification to include but not be limited to:

- Product identification
- Manufacturer's name, address, telephone number, website and email address
- Detailed comparison between the properties and characteristics of the specified product and the proposed substitution
- Statement of NZBC compliance including durability
- Details of manufacturer warranties

Plus an assessment of:

- Any changes required to the programme including any extension of time required
- Any consequential effects of the proposed substitution
- Any effect the substitution may have on Health & Safety requirements
- Allowance for time and cost for re-design and documentation (if applicable)
- Allowance for time and cost for obtaining an amendment to the Building Consent (if applicable)
- Any change in cost associated with the proposed substitution

and if requested:

- All current manufacturer's literature on the product
- Accreditations and appraisals available
- Reference standards
- Product limitations
- Samples
- List of existing installations in the vicinity of the project

1.16 ACCEPTANCE OF SUBSTITUTIONS

Acceptance of any proposed substitutions will be given in writing by the contract administrator.

**Amendments to issued Building Consent**

1.17 CONTRACTOR AMENDMENTS TO BUILDING CONSENT

Where the contractor has sought acceptance of a substitution or a variation which is for the contractor's own convenience and the substitution or variation requires an amendment to the Building Consent, the contractor must apply for and obtain the required amendment.

The contractor must:

- Obtain approval for substitutions from the contract administrator.
- Prepare and provide to the BCA all documentation required for the amendment.
- Pay all fees and other costs associated with this amendment.
- Where the amendment affects other approved plans, also amend those plans.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.18 PRINCIPAL AMENDMENTS TO BUILDING CONSENT

Where the principal is proposing a substitution or a variation which requires an amendment to the Building Consent, the contractor must provide to the principal information that the contractor has that is required for the amendment.

The principal will:

- Prepare and provide to the BCA all documentation required for the amendment.
- Pay all fees and other costs associated with this amendment.
- Where the amendment affects other approved plans, also amend those plans.

**Manufacturer's documents**

1.19 MANUFACTURER'S AND SUPPLIER'S INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's requirements, instructions, specifications or details mean those issued by them for their particular product, material or component and are the latest edition.

1.20 CONTRACTOR TO OBTAIN CURRENT DOCUMENTATION

Where manufacturer’s installation, application and execution requirements are referred to in this specification, the Contractor must ensure they are fully aware of this documentation. Whenever necessary obtain and keep on site the relevant latest version of such documentation and make it available to workers carrying out that part of the work.

1.21 DOCUMENTATION PROVIDED FOR BUILDING CONSENT

Documentation including manufacturer’s installation instructions, specification data sheets, producer statements, BRANZ and similar appraisals may be included in the issued Building Consent. These documents have been provided only to demonstrate compliance with the NZBC.

**Branded work sections**

1.22 BRANDED PRODUCTS / SYSTEMS

Where branded products and systems are specified, all products and components of the system must be as per the specification.

1.23 CROSS REFERENCED WORK SECTIONS

If any related work is cross referenced to a generic work section, but only the equivalent branded section is included in the specification, use that branded section. Confirm with the contract administrator if there is any doubt.

**Care of construction documents**

1.24 CONSTRUCTION ISSUE

Take receipt of the plans, specifications and other documents issued “for construction”. Keep at least one copy on site available for use by all on site workers. Keep a record of copies provided to others including subcontractors. Protect the documents as appropriate. Obtain replacement copies for documents that have become damaged.

1.25 REVISIONS TO CONSTRUCTION ISSUE

Where revised plans and other documents are issued ensure that superseded documents are deleted from the working sets. Ensure that subcontractors are provided with amended documents. Delete superseded documents by either:

- removing them from the working copy of the construction issue; or
- marking them as superseded

1.26 RETURN DOCUMENTS ISSUED FOR CONSTRUCTION

On completion of the contract works:

- Keep such copies of the plans, specification and other documents as reasonably required for contractor’s record purposes.
- Retrieve all other copies no longer required by parties.
- Agree method of disposal of such documents with the Contract Administrator.

The Contract Administrator will advise whether such documents shall be:

- delivered to the Contract Administrator/Owner; or


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- disposed of by normal waste disposal methods; or
- disposed of by secure document disposal methods.

### Confidentiality of documents

1.27 CONFIDENTIALITY OF DOCUMENTS

Documents shall not be given or copied to others who do not require them for carrying out services required for the construction of the works. Documents are only to be used for the contract. Maintain confidentiality of documents.

## 2 SELECTIONS

### Receipt of construction documents

2.1 DOCUMENT RECEIPT - ELECTRONIC DOCUMENTS

Electronic documents issued for construction shall be Obtained as an email attachment sent to an agreed address or obtained from a file hosting service


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1237 WARRANTIES

## 1 GENERAL

This general section refers to the requirements for warranties/guarantees, referred to within this specification and referred to within separate specifications/documents relating to this project. It includes:

- Warranties for parts of the work required by the principal in a required form
- Installer/applicator warranties for parts of the work in the installer's/applicator's standard form
- Manufacturer/supplier warranties provided with products, appliances and the like in the manufacturer's/supplier's standard form
- Guarantees provided by contractor in the contractor's standard form

These guarantees/warranties are in addition to any warranties, implied warranties, or guarantees that are required by the Building Act, the Building Regulations, or the building consent.

1.1 SCHEDULE SECTION

Refer to 1237S1 SCHEDULE OF WARRANTIES for work sections contained in this specification that have requirements for warranties.

**Warranties**

1.2 PROVIDE WARRANTIES

Provide executed warranties in favour of the principal in respect of, but not limited to, materials, components, service, application, installation and finishing called for in that specified section of work. The terms and conditions of the warranty in no case negate the minimum remedies available under common law as if no warranty had been offered. Failure to provide the warranty does not reduce liability under the terms of the warranty called for in that specified section of work.

- Conform to the WARRANTY AGREEMENT form included in the specification/conditions of contract.
- Commence warranties from the date of practical completion of the contract works (unless otherwise stated).
- Maintain their effectiveness for the times stated.
- Provide executed warranties prior to practical completion.

1.3 WARRANTIES - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Where installer/applicator warranties are offered covering execution and materials of proprietary products or complete installations, provide such warranties to the contract administrator. These warranties may be provided in lieu of the warranties that are otherwise required provided that these warranties are subject to similar conditions and periods.

Provide warranties in favour of the principal. The terms and conditions of such warranties in no case negate the minimum remedies available under common law as if no warranty had been offered. Failure to provide the warranty does not reduce liability for execution and materials for that part of the work.

1.4 WARRANTIES - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Where warranties are offered covering materials, equipment, appliances or proprietary products, provide all such warranties to the contract administrator.

Provide warranties in favour of the principal. The terms and conditions of such warranties in no case negate the minimum remedies available under common law as if no warranty had been offered. Failure to provide the warranty does not reduce liability for execution and materials for that part of the work.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Submission

1.5 REVIEW BY CONTRACTOR

Obtain the warranties from the installers, applicators, manufacturers and suppliers at the earliest possible date and review to ensure that they are correctly filled out and executed. Where warranties are executed as a deed, ensure that a duplicate copy is provided for execution by the owner/principal. Keep safe and secure until required for submission.

1.6 WARRANTIES - REQUIRED BY BUILDING CONSENT AUTHORITY

Obtain copies of warranties required as a condition of the building consent in the form required for submission to the BCA. Keep safe and secure until required at the time of the BCA final inspection and Code Compliance Certificate.

1.7 WARRANTIES - REQUIRED BY CONTRACT

Obtain copies of warranties listed in the contract documents. Provide all warranties at the same time. If the project has an operations and maintenance documentation provision, present the warranties with the operations and maintenance information. If no operations and maintenance documentation provision exists, present the warranties to the contract administrator in a loose-leaf binder with a contents index suitably labelled and including the project name and details. Provide a title on the binder edge "Warranties for (project name)"

1.8 WARRANTIES - SUBMISSION NZIA SCC CONTRACT

Refer to the contract conditions for any requirement relating to the time for submission for warranties and guarantees. Submit all warranties to the architect no later than the date of the contractor's advice of achieving practical completion.

1.9 WARRANTIES - SUBMISSION NZS 3902 CONTRACT

Refer to NZS 3902 Housing, alterations and small buildings contract. Submit warranties to the owner no later than the time the builder gives Notice of final completion to the owner.

1.10 WARRANTIES - SUBMISSION NZS 3910 CONTRACT

Refer to NZS 3910 Conditions of Contract for building and civil engineering construction, for requirements relating to the time for submission of warranties and guarantees. Submit all warranties/guarantees to the Contract Administrator no later than the date that the contractor notifies that it believes the contract works qualify for practical completion or any other time stated in the Specific Conditions of Contract.

1.11 GUARANTEES - SUBMISSION NZS 3915 CONTRACT

Refer to NZS 3915 Conditions of contract for building and civil engineering construction (where no person is appointed to act as engineer to the contract), clause 11.5 for requirements relating to the time for submission for guarantees. Submit all guarantees to the principal before or at the time of the issue of the provisional defects liability certificate, after the end of the defects liability period.

1.12 WARRANTIES/GUARANTEES - SUBMISSION NZS 3916 CONTRACT

Refer to NZS 3916 Conditions of contract for building and civil engineering – Design and construct, clauses 11.5 and 11.6 for requirements relating to the time for submission of warranties and guarantees respectively. Submit all warranties/guarantees to the engineer no later than the date that the contractor notifies that it believes the contract works qualify for practical completion.

## 2 SELECTIONS

### Project warranties / guarantees

### Weathertightness and watertightness warranty

2.1 WEATHERTIGHTNESS AND WATERTIGHTNESS WARRANTY

A warranty is required from the contractor for a minimum period of 2 years, covering the weathertightness of the complete building envelope and the watertightness of all liquid supply and disposal systems and fittings. This general warranty is in addition to any specific warranties required.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Provide this warranty in favour of the principal. The terms and conditions of this warranty in no case negate the minimum remedies available under common law as if no warranty had been offered. Failure to provide the warranty does not reduce liability for execution and materials for that part of the work.

- Conform to the standard form WARRANTY AGREEMENT included in the contract documents.
- Commence the warranty from the date of Practical Completion.
- Maintain its effectiveness for the time stated.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1237S1 SCHEDULE OF WARRANTIES

## 1 GENERAL

This schedule section identifies work sections in the specification that have requirements for warranties.

1.1 ASSOCIATED SECTIONS

Read in conjunction with:

- 1232S1 EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULE SECTIONS
- 1237 WARRANTIES
- Identified Work Sections

**Warranties**

1.2 WARRANTIES

Refer to the following sections:

| | |
|---|---|
| 4131A | Ardex Damp-Proof Membranes |
| 4161MP | Masons Underlays, Dpm & Dpc |
| 4231HA | James Hardie Axon™ Panel Cladding |
| 4239JH | James Hardie® Soffits |
| 4241RI | Roofing Industries Profiled Metal Cladding |
| 4311RI | Roofing Industries Profiled Metal Roofing |
| 4521 | Aluminium Windows & Doors |
| 4553PD | Parkwood Exterior Doors |
| 4610 | Glazing Residential |
| 4710EI | Eliment Glasswool Thermal & Acoustic Insulation |
| 4710P | Pink® Batts® Thermal & Acoustic Insulation |
| 5171RI | RCS Integra Lightweight Concrete Intertenancy System |
| 6122A | Ardex Floor Substrate Preparation |
| 6211 | Wall Tiling Systems |
| 6221A | ARDEX Floor Tiling Solutions |
| 6411 | Vinyl Surfacing |
| 6511 | Carpeting |
| 6700 | Painting General |
| 7120 | Hot & Cold Water System |
| 7150 | Sanitary Fixtures, Tapware & Accessories. |
| 7352 | Type 1 Domestic Smoke Alarm Systems |
| 7411RI | Roofing Industries Metal Rainwater Systems |
| 7513 | Central Heating Systems |
| 7701 | Electrical Basic |

1.3 PROJECT WARRANTIES

Refer to section 1237 WARRANTIES for project warranties.

1.4 WARRANTIES - ADDITIONAL ITEMS

Refer to separate documentation for warranties not contained within this specification.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1238 AS BUILT DOCUMENTATION

## 1 GENERAL

This general section relates to common requirements for the preparation, submission and review of as built documentation referred to within this specification and referred to within separate specifications/documents relating to this project. Detailed requirements for as built documentation for particular parts of the work may be included in specific work sections.

1.1 SCHEDULE SECTION

Refer to 1238S1 SCHEDULE OF AS BUILT DOCUMENTATION for work sections contained in this specification that have requirements for as built documentation.

1.2 AS BUILT DOCUMENT REQUIREMENTS

Where requirements for the as built documents and records are not stated in a specific section, they shall include:

As built drawings recording:

- The actual positions as constructed of all sewer, stormwater, sanitary plumbing, piped and ducted services, electrical and mechanical services.
- Inverts and locations of services at key points within the building and at the property lines.
- Dimension services in relation to the structure and building grid lines.
- Ductwork, piping, conduit and equipment, including such items provided for future use.
- Depth of various elements of foundations in relationship to the ground floor level
- Field changes of dimensions
- Other significant deviations and changes which are concealed in construction and cannot be identified by visual inspection
- Access doors and panels

Records of:

- Products and materials selected for alternatives specified
- Approved substitutions and accepted alternatives
- Other approved changes and deviations to items specified.

1.3 PROVISIONAL AS BUILT DOCUMENTS

Prior to practical completion provide provisional/draft as built documents in sufficient detail to allow the principal to operate, maintain, adjust and re-assemble the contract works and to allow for review by the reviewer. Where no named reviewer has been nominated, submit the as built documentation to the contract administrator. Submit in hard copy and electronic form.

1.4 AS BUILT DOCUMENT REVIEW

As built document review indicates only that the reviewer is satisfied that the documents are legible. The review is not a check of the accuracy or completeness of the documents, however the reviewer may comment on any aspect of the documentation and require the documents to be revised and resubmitted. Review of as built documents does not relieve the contractor of responsibility for their correctness.

Where no time is stated in a specific section, allow 10 working days for review by the reviewer. Where a large amount of documentation is involved more time will be necessary.

1.5 COMPLETE AS BUILT DOCUMENTS

Prior to the end of the defects notification/liability period, provide complete as built documents reflecting any review requirements, with all Information of good quality and properly titled, numbered, cross-referenced and dated. Provide documents in sufficient detail to allow the principal to operate, maintain, adjust and re-assemble the contract works. Submit in hard copy and electronic form to the contract administrator.

1.6 AS BUILT DOCUMENTS - ELECTRONIC COPY

Provide an electronic copy of the as built documents in the following format:

| | |
|---|---|
| Drawings: | PDF format (in addition provide DWG files if available) |
| Other documents: | PDF format |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1238S1 SCHEDULE OF AS BUILT DOCUMENTATION

## 1 GENERAL

This schedule section identifies work sections in the specification that have requirements for the submission of as built documentation.

1.1 ASSOCIATED SECTIONS

Read in conjunction with:

- 1232S1 EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULE SECTIONS
- 1238 AS BUILT DOCUMENTATION
- Identified Work Sections

**As built documents**

1.2 AS BUILT DOCUMENTS

Refer to the following sections:

7430 Drainage

1.3 AS BUILT DOCUMENTS - ADDITIONAL ITEMS

Refer to separate documentation for as built documentation requirements not contained within this specification.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1240 ESTABLISHMENT

## 1 GENERAL

This general section relates to site establishment including:

- Notices and approvals
- Inspections
- Site preparation
- Temporary construction

### Notices and approvals

1.1 STATUTORY OBLIGATIONS

Comply with all statutory obligations and regulations of regulatory bodies controlling the execution of the works.

1.2 BUILDING CONSENT AUTHORITY AND NETWORK UTILITY APPROVALS

Attend on building consent authority officers, statutory and network utility inspectors, as necessary to obtain approvals, including those required for the completion of the works.

1.3 NOTIFY NETWORK UTILITY OPERATORS

Notify all network utility operators of proposed works before commencing site operations. Ascertain location of services or confirm that none exist in the vicinity of the works. Take all necessary precautions to avoid damage to existing services.

### Inspections

### Site preparation

1.4 SITE ACCESS

Access to the site is limited to: road access from R.O.W ACC 005

1.5 SITE AND SOIL SURVEYS

Carry out all investigations necessary and peruse all information available to determine ground conditions and likely ground performance both on the site and adjacent to it. Also refer to the territorial authority project information memorandum (PIM).

### Temporary construction

1.6 TEMPORARY BUILDINGS

Provide as necessary temporary sheds, offices, lunch rooms, sanitary accommodation and other temporary buildings required for storage, management of the works, for the use of workers while on site and as required by Acts and Regulations.

1.7 TEMPORARY SITE FENCING

Provide and maintain a temporary site fence, 2 metres high from ground level on the side accessible to the public. Construct to comply with NZBC F5/AS1 Construction and demolition hazards.

1.8 SITE - SAFETY SIGNAGE

Provide hazard board and other safety signage as required.

### First aid

1.9 FIRST AID EQUIPMENT

Provide first aid equipment.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES

## 1 GENERAL

This general section relates to temporary works and services required for the construction of the contract works. It includes

- Temporary works and services including temporary fencing and hoardings
- Scaffolding
- General care and protection
- Rubbish removal

**Temporary works**

1.1 COSTS RELATING TO TEMPORARY WORKS

Pay all rates/fees in respect of temporary works.

1.2 MAINTENANCE OF TEMPORARY WORKS

Maintain alter, adapt and move temporary works and services as necessary. Clear away when no longer required and make good.

1.3 SAFEGUARD THE SITE, THE WORKS AND MATERIALS

Take reasonable precautions to prevent unauthorised access, including access outside working hours, to the site, the works and adjoining property. Safeguard the site, the works, materials and plant from damage and theft.

1.4 SITE FENCING

Provide and maintain a site fence, 2 metres high from ground level on the side accessible to the public. Construct to comply with NZBC F5/AS1 Construction and demolition hazards. Construct as required for public areas and as shown on the drawings.

Construct the fence with:

- galvanized chain link netting with a 50mm x 50mm maximum grid size
- posts at 2.5 metre centres maximum
- gap at the bottom of the fence no greater than 100mm

1.5 SITE FENCING - NON-PUBLIC AREAS

Provide and maintain a 1 metre high site fence to non-public areas. Construct using:

- warratah stakes at 1.5 metre centres fitted with safety caps
- plastic safety mesh

1.6 SITE HOARDINGS

Provide and maintain hoardings, 2 metres high from ground level on the side accessible to the public. Construct to comply with NZBC F5/AS1 Construction and demolition hazards. Construct as required for public areas and as shown on the drawings.

Construct hoardings with continuous cladding of:

- close butted timber at least 19mm thick; or
- 6mm exterior grade plywood on studs at 600mm centres maximum; or
- 9mm exterior grade plywood on studs at 1 metre centres maximum; or
- continuous metal cladding suitably supported to provide strength and rigidity

1.7 GANTRIES, PLANKED FOOTWAYS, GUARD RAILS

Provide temporary gantries, planked footways and guard rails as necessary to protect the public and others, for the proper execution of the works and to meet the requirements of territorial or other authority.

1.8 PROVIDE SEDIMENT AND SILT RUN OFF PROTECTION

Provide appropriate measures to prevent or minimise sediment generation and silt run off. Comply with territorial and other authority requirements relating to carrying out earthworks.

Prevent silt run off by:

- exposing only as much ground as required at any time
- providing run off channels, contour drains or earth bunds to divert clean water away from the site on to stable sealed or grassed ground


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- capture silt by the use of silt fences, vegetation buffer strips, sediment ponds or earth bunds.

Provide sediment control by:

- earth bunds constructed across the slope to control and detain run off
- silt fences constructed using filter fabric stretched between posts at a maximum of 1 metre spacing.

Pump water from trenches and other areas of the site using methods to prevent sediment entering any drain or watercourse. Filter dirty water before discharging into drainage system.

1.9 PROVIDE CONCRETE WASHWATER RUN OFF PROTECTION

Provide appropriate measures to prevent cement/concrete washwater or slurry run off to; drains or waterways, landscaped areas new or remaining and adjoining public or private properties. Comply with territorial and other authority requirements relating to cement/concrete washwater.

Control run off from:

- Cement/concrete based material production, placing and finishing.
- Hosing down and cleaning of, tools and equipment, fresh material, and spilt or surplus material, pumps and mixers etc.
- Wet cutting or grinding.
- Slab watering etc.
- Water cleaning of new concrete elements, fresh used formwork etc.

Small project with relatively large exposed ground areas - prevent run off by:

- directing small amounts of washwater onto the area of ground closest to the work.
- for larger amounts provide run off channels, and small soak pits
- very small amounts of washwater with no aggregate and only a small amount of sand may be spread over existing lawns.

Large project and those without suitable ground area - prevent run off by:

- plan and implement washwater control measures based on the expected volumes, allow for the timely removal and safe disposal of liquids and solids.
- Limit the volume of water used for washing down to the extent required.
- Control the flow of washwater so that it is directed to proper catchments.
- providing watertight bunds, pits or tanks, filtered washwater is not to be discharged to drains.

Spilt or surplus material:

- if possible allow to set and either use or dispose of as hardfill.
- pre-made concrete items, either use or dispose of as hardfill.

Pump washwater away from drains, waterways and adjoining property.

1.10 EXCAVATION SAFETY

To the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015.

Carry out excavation to WorkSafe, Good Practice Guidelines - Excavation Safety. This may include deep excavation, trenching, and areas behind unfilled retaining walls.
Carry out excavation using plant and equipment suitable for the purpose.

**Scaffolding**

1.11 SCAFFOLDING

Provide scaffolding for the efficient execution of the works.

Comply with:

- Health and Safety at Work Act 2015
- Health and Safety in Employment Regulations 1995
- Health and Safety at Work (General Risk and Workplace Management) Regulations 2016
- Worksafe - Scaffolding in New Zealand - Good Practice Guidelines


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Temporary services**

1.12 WATER

Provide clean, fresh water for the works and make arrangements for distributing about the site.

1.13 ELECTRICITY

To AS/NZS 3012.

Nominate the person to install and be responsible for the complete temporary electrical installation. The name and designation of the person responsible is to be displayed prominently and close to the main switch or circuit breaker.

Inspect and overhaul the installation at such intervals as are prescribed by the network utility operator but not more than three monthly intervals.

1.14 TELEPHONE

Provide on-site temporary telephone facilities.

1.15 COMPUTER FACILITIES

Provide on-site temporary computer facilities complete with an email and internet connection capable of sending, receiving and printing site communications.

1.16 PRINTER

Provide on-site temporary printing facilities capable of printing A4 and A3 colour prints.

1.17 IMAGING

Keep available devices able to take and send quality printable digital photographs.

**Care and protection - Site**

1.18 LOCATE AND PROTECT SURVEY MARKS

Review information provided relating to survey marks. Physically locate and protect survey marks. Where required use a licensed cadastral surveyor to reinstate survey marks disturbed during construction.

1.19 LOCATE EXISTING SERVICES

Review information provided relating to underground and above ground services. Physically locate the position of all such services. Arrange with the network utility operator for all necessary exploratory work, location, protection, isolation, off-setting, reinstatement or alterations required. Record any alterations made to such utilities.

1.20 PROTECT EXISTING SERVICES

Protect existing services and parts of service systems, whether indicated or not, that are to remain in place during the execution of the works. Provide temporary caps or covers to prevent the ingress of dust and other contaminants into the systems, ducts, pipes etc. Reinstate where required and repair any damage resulting from carrying out the contract works.

1.21 PROTECT EXISTING LANDSCAPE ELEMENTS

Protect existing trees, fences, gates, walls, gardens and other designated landscape features which are to remain in position during the execution of the works. Construct a temporary fence at the outer edge of the drip line of trees to be protected. Comply with territorial authority requirements.

1.22 MAKE GOOD - SITE

Make good all damage to existing roads, footpaths, grounds, services, landscape elements and site features caused in carrying out the contract works.

**Care and protection - Project**

1.23 TEMPORARY PROTECTION

Provide and maintain temporary protection as required to protect products during transport, storage and handling. Provide temporary protection as required to protect the work in progress and the finished work. Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for removal of protection.

1.24 SPECIAL PROTECTION GENERAL

Refer to individual work sections for any special protection requirements.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Care and protection - miscellaneous

1.25 CONSTRUCTION KEYING AND SECURITY

Provide locksets with temporary keying, or install with the cylinders removed.

1.26 TEMPORARY STORAGE

Provide temporary storage areas and protective covers and screens to meet the requirements of the products to be stored.

### Rubbish removal

1.27 PERIODIC RUBBISH REMOVAL

Maintain on site appropriate means for the storage and removal of construction waste material. Where required or appropriate provide for the separate storage of recyclable waste and other materials requiring special disposal.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1260 PROJECT MANAGEMENT

## 1 GENERAL

This general section relates to project management requirements including:

- Cost control
- Communicating and records
- Confidentiality
- Programming
- Hold points and notification points
- Working hours
- Health and safety

### Cash flow estimates

1.1 CASH FLOW ESTIMATES

The contractor is required to submit to the contract administrator a detailed cash flow estimate of all payments to which the contractor considers they will be entitled to under the contract. Where no time is stated in the conditions of contract, provide the cash flow estimate within 20 working days of the date of award of the contract. The contractor shall subsequently submit such revised cash flow estimates at 3 month intervals.

### Cost control

1.2 MEASUREMENT

Give reasonable notice to the contract administrator before covering up work which requires to be measured.

1.3 DAYWORK VOUCHERS

To be signed by the contractor's representative as confirming the labour, times and materials used, before being supplied to the contract administrator.

### Communicating and records

1.4 MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

Communications between the parties shall be as follows: -

| | |
|---|---|
| Directions: | In writing delivered by email with a copy by post or hand |
| Meeting minutes: | In writing delivered by email |
| RFI's: | (Requests for information) by email or in writing to the contract administrator |

1.5 DELIVERY OF COMMUNICATIONS

Deliver communications to the addresses listed in the contract agreement by means as allowed.

Where such addresses are not included in the contract agreement:

- deliver to the addressee by hand; or
- post to the postal address stated in the project directory; or
- deliver to the street address as stated in the Project Directory; or
- send by email to the email address stated in the Project Directory; or
- where agreed, deliver via a file hosting service or an electronic project management system.

1.6 SERVICE OF NOTICES

Serve notices to the addresses listed in the contract agreement by means as allowed.

1.7 CHANGE OF ADDRESS

The principal, contractor and the contract administrator must notify the others if they change their address for delivery or transmission of communications.

1.8 RECORDS

Ensure all records specified are kept, held and collated on site in a form that makes the information easily accessible when it is needed. Distribute copies as and when necessary to those persons entitled under the contract to that information.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.9 PROGRESS PHOTOGRAPHS

Take digital photographs recording progress. Refer to SELECTIONS.

**Confidentiality**

1.10 CONFIDENTIALITY - PUBLICITY

Unless specifically agreed photographs and other images of the work are not to be used by the contractor, subcontractors, material suppliers and others involved in the construction of the works.

Photographs taken for record purposes may be kept but must not be passed to other persons.

1.11 CONFIDENTIALITY AGREEMENT

Where required as a condition of the contract arrange for workers to provide a confidentially agreement. Workers who have not provided such an agreement shall be excluded from the site.

**Programming**

1.12 PROGRAMME

Include the proposed sequence of all significant on-site and off-site activities, including any intermediate key dates mentioned in the contract. Identify the critical path. Provide a tabulated schedule of information for each activity in order of:

- brief description
- duration in suitable time unit
- earliest start and latest finish time
- total float
- key dates for the supply of information or materials by others.

Identify the dates by which particular information, material or plant need to be supplied or arranged by the contract administrator. Also identify any constraints which may have been imposed by the programme.

Supply copies of the programme to the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| Contract administrator | 1 |
| Architect | 1 |
| Designer | 1 |
| Principal | 1 |
| Quantity surveyor | 1 |
| Site supervisor | 1 |

Monitor the programme by:

- recording progress regularly on the site chart
- informing the contract administrator promptly of any circumstances affecting any part of the programme structure and timing
- reviewing the programme once a month making alterations as needed and agreed to and re-issuing the required copies.

**Hold Points and Notification Points**

Refer to section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for definition of hold points and notification points.

**Working hours**

1.13 WORKING HOURS

Work on site is not restricted. Comply with territorial authority consent conditions and noise and nuisance controls.

**Health and safety**

1.14 HEALTH AND SAFETY LEGISLATION

Refer to the requirements of the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015. Comply also with all other relevant New Zealand safety legislation.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

The Contractor will ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, that, each subcontractor they engage and each separate contractor is aware of and complies with its obligations under health and safety-related law.

For the purpose of health and safety-related law, the contract administrator and others involved in contract administration and observation and construction monitoring will not at any time have management or control of the Workplace.

1.15 HEALTH AND SAFETY REGULATIONS, CODES AND GUIDES

Comply with:

- Relevant New Zealand safety legislation including, Health and Safety at Work (General Risk and Workplace Management) Regulations 2016, also Health and Safety in Employment Regulations 1995 as amended by that Regulation and the appropriate Health and Safety at Work Regulations.
- WorkSafe publications including "Guidelines for the provision of facilities for general safety in the construction industry".
- Relevant codes of practice, guides, guidelines and standards.

Until further regulations are made under the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 to cover them, the transitional provisions of the Act continue in force until revoked or amended.

1.16 HEALTH AND SAFETY IMPLEMENTATION

Take all practical steps to make the site and the contract works safe and to provide and maintain a safe working environment. Ensure that all those working on or visiting the site are aware of the rules governing site safety, are properly supervised and are not unnecessarily exposed to hazards and risks.

Co-operate, consult and co-ordinate health and safety matters with each PCBU including all subcontractors, suppliers, separate contractors, others engaged on the project and others who may be affected by the construction of the works.

Identify any significant hazards and risks.

Maintain proper procedures for dealing with any emergencies that may arise. Immediately investigate accidents, identify their cause and maintain a register of accidents and serious harm. Provide a copy of any report which the contractor is required to make to a public authority on any accident which is associated with carrying out the contract works and results in serious harm to any person.

Refer to individual work sections for detailed requirements on this project.

1.17 SUSPENSION OF HAZARDOUS WORK

On the request of the contract administrator, acting on reasonable grounds, suspend any identified hazardous activities and proceed to eliminate, isolate or minimise them in order to comply with the Act, without prejudice to any other rights of the principal under the contract.

1.18 SITE SAFETY PERSON

Appoint a suitably qualified site safety person to co-ordinate site safety and to attend all site meetings.

1.19 HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN

Prepare and submit a health and safety plan to the contract administrator before commencing work on site. Include in that plan all people on site and the general public, as well as the following items and any other necessary items:

- identification of existing and potential construction hazards and risks
- Any design construction safety matters identified in section 1220 PROJECT and/or any separate project design construction safety report.
- safety procedures to eliminate, isolate or minimise construction hazards and risks
- the equipment to be used to minimise the hazards and risks
- the maintenance of a register of hazards and risks for the site
- the name and qualifications of the site safety person


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- emergency procedures
- first aid facilities and safety equipment
- the methodology for notifying, recording and investigating accidents and injuries.

Advise the contract administrator of unusual or atypical features in the Plan in addition to any features already identified in section 1220 PROJECT and/or any separate project design construction safety report. Keep a copy of the plan in the site office.

1.20 MAINTAIN HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN

Maintain health and safety plan and alter to accommodate changing situations and /or substitutions. Advise contract administrator of changes.

1.21 COMPLY WITH SITE SAFETY PLAN

Carry out all construction operations in accordance with the submitted health and safety plan.

1.22 INFORM WORKERS OF HAZARDS AND RISKS

Inform workers and others on the site of:

- hazards and risks they may be exposed to while working or other legitimate activities
- hazards and risks they may create while working which could harm others
- how these hazards and risks may be minimised
- emergency procedures
- the location of first aid facilities and safety equipment.

1.23 EXPLOSIVES

Do not use explosives except with the written approval of the territorial authority/WorkSafe. Comply with their safety requirements and use construction blasters holding a current, appropriate Approved Handler Certificate and Controlled Substance Licence issued by WorkSafe, to the Health and Safety at Work (Hazardous Substances) Regulations.

1.24 POWDER-ACTUATED FASTENING TOOLS

Comply with the requirements of WorkSafe and the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015. Powder-actuated fastening tool operators to have the appropriate current Certificate and/or Licence and tools to have the appropriate certificate of fitness if necessary.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 1270 CONSTRUCTION

## 1 GENERAL

This GENERAL section relates to common requirements for construction issues including:

- Quality control and assurance
- Noise and nuisance
- Set-out and tolerances
- Common execution requirements
- Qualifications
- Common product requirements
- Common requirements for samples and prototypes
- Common requirements for spare and maintenance products
- Cleaning during the works
- Removal of protection
- Completion requirements
- Commissioning
- Practical completion submission
- Defects period submissions
- Completion submissions

1.1 SCHEDULE SECTION

Refer to 1270S1 SCHEDULE OF SAMPLES & PROTOTYPES for work sections contained in this specification that have requirements for samples and prototypes.

Refer to 1270S2 SCHEDULE OF SPARES & MAINTENANCE PRODUCTS for work sections contained in this specification that have requirements for spares and maintenance products.

**Quality control and assurance**

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Carry out and record regular checks of material quality and accuracy, including:

- Concrete quality and finish.
- Dimensional accuracy of structural column locations (following completion of foundations).
- All perimeter columns and frames for plumb.
- Levels of all floors relative to the site datum.
- Framing timber moisture content.

Where any material, quality or dimension falls outside specified or required tolerances, obtain written direction from the contract administrator. Where building consent approval is affected, confirm remedial action with the Building Consent Authority.

Provide all materials, plant, attendances, supervision, inspections and programming to ensure the required quality standards are met by all project personnel.

1.3 NOTICE

Give notice to the contract administrator and any other nominated person of hold points and notification points. Refer to work sections and 1260 PROJECT MANAGEMENT for hold points and notification points required.

1.4 NOTIFIABLE WORK

Lodge notice of the intention to commence any notifiable work and any work that will at any time include any notifiable work, in accordance with Health and Safety in Employment Regulations 1995.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Noise and nuisance**

1.5 LIMIT CONSTRUCTION NOISE

Minimise the effects of noise generation by including in the planning of the work such factors as placing of plant, programming the sequence of operations and other management functions. Limit construction noise to comply with the requirements of NZS 6803, the requirements of the Resource Management Act sections 326, 327 and 328 and the Health and Safety in Employment Regulations 1995 clause 11.

1.6 ACCEPTABLE NOISE LEVELS

Refer to NZS 6803 Tables 2 and 3 for the upper limits of construction work noise received in residential zones, dwellings in rural areas, industrial areas and commercial areas, note also the allowed adjustments. Do not exceed these limits or any limits imposed by regional councils or territorial authorities.

1.7 PROVIDE INFORMATION TO NEIGHBOURS

Provide information to neighbours of any noise generation from the site liable to constitute a problem. Explain to them the means being used to minimise excessive noise and establish with them the timings most suitable for the noise generating work to be carried on.

Discuss with any complainant the measures being used to minimise noise. Where possible modify these measures to accommodate particular circumstances. Finally, determine the sound level at the location under discussion using methods and observation reporting as laid down in NZS 6803. If the noise level is above the upper limits of NZS 6803, table 2 and table 3, cease the noise generating operation and remedy the problem.

1.8 ROADWAY AND FOOTPATH

Keep the adjacent footpath and road clear at all times. Where work must be carried out in the roadway or footpath, obtain required consents from the territorial authority. Where temporary use is made of the footpath or roadway for deliveries and the like ensure that public safety is protected and the goods and materials moved as soon as practicable. Sweep, wash and otherwise clean the roadway/footpath and restore it to its previous condition.

1.9 VEHICLE CROSSING

Make good damage that has occurred as a result of carrying out the contract works. Where there has been significant damage, contact the territorial authority and obtain instructions for making good. Pay the territorial authority costs associated with making good.

1.10 TRAFFIC SAFETY

The management of traffic safety on-site and related traffic off-site, to WorkSafe Managing Work Site Traffic - Good Practice Guidelines. Movement on- and off-site also to territorial authority and/or NZTA requirements.

1.11 DIRT AND DROPPINGS

Remove dirt and droppings deposited on public or private thoroughfares from vehicles servicing the site to the satisfaction of the appropriate authorities and the contract administrator.

1.12 DAMAGE AND NUISANCE

Take precautions to prevent damage and nuisance from water, fire, smoke, dust, rubbish and all other causes resulting from the construction works.

1.13 SMOKE FREE REQUIREMENTS

In accordance with the Smoke Free Environments Act 1990 smoking is not allowed on site.

1.14 RESTRICTIONS

Do not:

- light rubbish fires on the site.
- bring dogs on to or near the site.
- bring radios/audio players on to the site.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Set-out and tolerances**

1.15 SURVEY INFORMATION

Locate and verify survey marks and datum points required to set out the works. Where these do not exist or cannot be located advise the contract administrator who will arrange for the required points to be established.

Record and maintain their position. Re-establish and replace disturbed or obliterated marks.

1.16 DATUM

Establish a permanent site datum to confirm the proposed levels and their relationship to all other existing and new levels.

1.17 SET-OUT

Set out the work to conform with the drawings.

1.18 SET-OUT BY LICENSED CADASTRAL SURVEYOR

Before commencing construction provide the contract administrator with a certificate prepared by a licensed cadastral surveyor that the set-out is complete and that the building is accurately placed on the site.

During construction provide the contract administrator with a certificate, prepared by the same licensed cadastral surveyor confirming the set-out of the foundations and grid lines. Necessary adjustments are to be determined and agreed to by the contract administrator before proceeding further.

1.19 CONFIRM HEIGHT IN RELATION TO BOUNDARY

Arrange for the licensed cadastral surveyor to provide a certificate certifying that the building has been constructed within the allowed height in relation to boundary. Obtain details from the principal of the person they have engaged to carry out this certification and advise the surveyor when they can carry out the required survey.

Provide the certificate to the local authority. Provide a copy of the certificate to the contract administrator.

1.20 USE OF SET-OUT INSTRUMENTS

Permit without charge, the use of instruments already on site for checking, setting out and levels.

1.21 CHECK DIMENSIONS

Check all dimensions both on drawings and site, particularly the correlation between components and work in place. Take all dimensions on drawings to be between structural elements before linings or finishes, unless clearly stated otherwise.

1.22 TOLERANCES

All work to be level, plumb, and true to line and face. Unless otherwise specified in specific work sections of this specification, tolerances for structural work shall comply with the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| Concrete construction: | To NZS 3109 Concrete construction<br>Clause 3.9 Tolerances for reinforcement<br>Table 5.1 Tolerance for precast components<br>Table 5.2 Tolerance for in situ construction<br>To NZS 3114 Concrete surface finishes |
| Masonry construction: | To NZS 4210 Masonry construction: Materials and workmanship<br>Clause 2.6.5 Tolerances<br>Table 2.2 Maximum tolerances |
| Structural steelwork: | To NZS 3404.1 Steel structures standard<br>Section 14.4 Tolerances (after fabrication)<br>Section 15.3 Tolerances (erection) |
| Timber framing: | To NZS 3604 Timber-framed buildings<br>Clause 2.2 Tolerances<br>Table 2.1 Timber framing tolerances |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Refer to work sections for tolerance requirements for finishes.

**Execution**

1.23 EXAMINE PREVIOUS WORK

Before commencing any part of the work carefully examine the previous work on which it depends, to ensure it is of the required standard.

1.24 REPORT DEFECTIVE PREVIOUS WORK

Refer defects to the contractor to be remedied, if the remedy is outside the scope of the contract documents the contractor shall obtain direction from the contract administrator. Do not carry out work over previous work that is defective and will affect the required standard.

1.25 EXECUTION GENERALLY

Construct the work in accordance with the documents issued for construction including any direction that may have been given by the contract administrator that varies the construction document.

1.26 EXECUTION - NO DETAIL IS PROVIDED

The documents issued for construction will not include all details relating to every material, junction and interface with other materials.

Where the detail provided is of a general nature, or where no detail is provided, refer to the manufacturer's documents for information relating to installation and execution of that part of the work.

Where there is more than one method or detail appropriate to the part of the work in question, refer the options to the Contract Administrator for direction as to which detail or method to use.

1.27 EXECUTION - ACCEPTABLE SOLUTION IS REFERRED TO

Where a NZBC Acceptable Solution is referred to in the specification but not shown on the plans, obtain a copy of that Acceptable Solution and make it available to the workers carrying out that part of the work.

1.28 MINIMISE DELAYS DUE TO WEATHER

Use appropriate techniques and methods to prevent damage and minimise delays due to weather.

**Defective or damaged work**

1.29 DEFECTIVE OR DAMAGED WORK

Repair defective, damaged and marked elements, or replace them where repair is not possible or will not be acceptable. Adjust operation of equipment and moving parts not working correctly. Refer to individual work sections for any special requirements.

**Hot work - fire safety**

1.30 HOT WORK

Generally, to NZS 4781 Code of Practice for Safety in Welding and Cutting, includes but not limited to: Welding; flame cutting; disc cutting; grinding; bitumen blowers; blow lamps; brazing; burning off; soldering; use of hot air guns.

Note - where the standard refers to the use of asbestos, alternative fire-resistant materials are to be used.

1.31 COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL

Manage fire risk to adjacent combustible materials by isolating hot work at a safe distance away, or store combustible materials away from fire hazards. Additional precautions may be necessary if combustible material cannot be separated from hot work, refer to NZS 4781, 6.1.4.

1.32 HOT WORK PERMIT

A hot work permit, issued by the main contractor, is required when it is not possible to isolate hot work from adjacent fire hazards. Refer to example in NZS 4781, Appendix A.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.33 FIRE SYSTEMS

Fire systems should remain operational where possible while welding or cutting work is performed. Where required, shield fire systems to NZS 4781 clause 6.4.

1.34 DURING SUSPENDED WORK

Maintain a fire watch at least 30-minutes after hot works are suspended e.g. during lunch breaks or overnight, to NZS 4781, clause 6.2.7.

For hot works in confined spaces, prevent potential ignition of flammable gases, to NZS 4781 clause 6.5.

**Qualifications**

1.35 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

The work is to be carried out by workers and / or supervisors who are experienced, competent and familiar with the materials and the techniques specified. Workers must also be familiar with the manufacturers' and suppliers' installation and application instructions and standard details provided by them in relation to the use of the products for this project. If requested provide evidence of qualification / experience.

1.36 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS – RESTRICTED BUILDING WORK

Where restricted building work (RBW) forms part of the contract works, workers, or supervisors of that work must be licensed building practitioners (LBP) holding current licenses for the particular restricted building work.

For rare instances where non-RBW also requires an LBP refer to individual work sections for details.

1.37 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS – MANUFACTURER / SUPPLIER REQUIREMENTS

Where required by a manufacturer or supplier, workers must be specifically trained /approved / accredited / registered / licensed / certified by them. Refer to individual work sections for details.

1.38 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS – LICENSED UNDER STATUTE

Where workers and / or supervisors of work are required to be licensed, registered or similar under legislation, they must have a current license before they start the work and maintain currency until their part of the work has been completed and all documentation that is required has been provided.

1.39 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS – INDUSTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

Where workers and / or supervisors of work are required to be trained / licensed / certified or similar under industry rules or contractual requirements, they must have a current qualification before they start the work and maintain currency until their part of the work has been completed. Refer to individual work sections for details.

1.40 QUALIFICATIONS – PRODUCER STATEMENTS

Where producer statements are required for parts of the work, ensure that person is suitably qualified and authorized to issue such producer statements.

1.41 REPLACEMENT OF PERSON

Should it be necessary to replace a person, ensure that records of work, producer statements, warranties and the like required for the part of the work they have carried out are obtained.

Ensure that the replacement person takes responsibility for the work they carry out and that they are able to provide such records of work, producer statements, warranties and the like required as a condition of the contract and the building consent.

**Products**

1.42 NEW PRODUCTS

Products to be new unless stated otherwise, of the specified standard, and complying with all cited documents.

1.43 COMPATIBILITY OF PRODUCTS

Ensure all parts of a construction or finish are compatible and their individual use approved by the manufacturers and suppliers of other parts of the system. Source all parts of a system from a single manufacturer or supplier.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.44 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Protect products during transit and delivery on site and / or off site. Reject and replace goods that are defective or damaged or will not provide the required finish.

Handle products carefully to avoid damage and distortion and in accordance with codes of practice and the manufacturer's or supplier's requirements. Avoid any contact with potentially damaging surfaces or conditions.

Store products to avoid visual damage, environmental damage, mechanical damage and distortion. Store in accordance with codes of practice and the product manufacturer's or supplier's requirements. Maintain the proper condition of any protective packaging, wrapping and support.

Refer to individual work sections for any special requirements.

1.45 SUBSTRATE CONDITIONS

Ensure substrate conditions are within the manufacturer's or supplier's stated guidelines both before and during the installation of any material, product or system. Obtain written instructions on the necessary action to rectify unsatisfactory conditions.

1.46 INSTALLING PRODUCTS

Install in accordance with the manufacturer's or supplier's technical literature. Ensure that all installers are familiar with the required substrate conditions and the manufacturer's or supplier's specified preparation, fixing and finishing techniques.

1.47 COMPLY WITH STANDARDS

Comply with the relevant and/or cited Standard for any material or component. Obtain certificates of compliance when requested by the contract administrator.

1.48 CONDITION OF PRODUCTS

To be in perfect condition when incorporated into the work.

1.49 INCOMPATIBLE PRODUCTS

Separate incompatible materials and metals with separation layers, sleeves or gaskets of plastic film, bituminous felt or mastic or paint coatings, installed so that none are visible on exposed surfaces.

**Samples**

1.50 SAMPLES FOR REVIEW

Where specified in the work sections submit samples and any nominated supporting documentation to the named reviewer and notify the contract administrator of the submission. Where no person is named as the reviewer, submit to the contract administrator.

Samples for review may be described as a portable sample for review, portable control sample, fixed sample for review or fixed control sample. A portable sample refers to a sample that is easily movable, convenient for carrying. A fixed sample refers to a sample that is not portable. If the location of a fixed sample is not defined in the work section, obtain direction from the contract administrator.

For samples that are located on site, or by agreement with the contract administrator are located off site, notify the reviewer and contract administrator of their location and availability for review.

Timing for the provision and review of samples is to be included in the contract programme. Where no time is stated in a work section allow 10 working days for each review. Allow for such resubmission and further review as may be required. No extension of time will be allowed for resubmission and further review.

Obtain written instructions in relation to the samples from the contract administrator. Do not proceed further with related work items until advised to continue.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Samples may be incorporated in the finished work if confirmed in writing by the contract administrator, otherwise allow to completely remove any fixed samples. Remove from the site any rejected samples.

Refer to SAMPLES clauses in work sections for further detail.

1.51 CONTROL SAMPLES

Samples become control samples if an instruction is given by the contract administrator to that effect. Control samples will be used for comparison purposes throughout the contract. Control samples may be portable or fixed in place, refer to SAMPLES clauses in work sections for further detail.

Control samples that are to remain on site, or otherwise in the care of the contractor, are to be maintained in original condition.

If confirmed by the contract administrator, fixed control samples may be incorporated in the finished work, otherwise allow to remove fixed control samples from site when instructed by the contract administrator.

1.52 OTHER SAMPLE REQUIREMENTS

Where specified in the work sections obtain samples for the purposes described.

**Prototypes**

1.53 PROTOTYPES - TESTING

Where specified in the work sections provide and test prototypes. Timing for the provision, testing, disassembling, re-assembling, retesting and review of prototypes and test results is to be included in the contract programme. Where no time is stated in a work section allow 10 working days for each review of test results. Submit test results to the named reviewer and to the contract administrator. Where no person is named as the reviewer submit test results to the contract administrator.

Obtain written instructions in relation to the prototype from the contract administrator. Do not proceed further with related work items until advised to continue.

Refer to PROTOTYPES - TESTING clauses in work sections for further detail.

1.54 PROTOTYPES - REVIEW

Where specified in the work sections provide prototypes for review. Timing for the provision, disassembling, re-assembling and review of prototypes is to be included in the contract programme. Where no time is stated in a work section allow 10 working days for review by the named reviewer. Where no person is named as the reviewer notify the contract administrator for direction.

Obtain written instructions in relation to the prototype from the contract administrator. Do not proceed further with related work items until advised to continue.

Refer to PROTOTYPES - REVIEW clauses in work sections for further detail.

1.55 PROTOTYPES - GENERAL

Refer to the PROTOTYPES - TESTING and PROTOTYPES - REVIEW clauses in work section for details on what is to happen after the review and or testing of the prototype is complete. Where no information is provided refer to the contract administrator for direction.

Prototypes may become control samples if an instruction is given by the contract administrator to that effect.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Spares & maintenance products**

**Cleaning during the works**

1.56 PERIODIC SITE CLEANING

Carry out periodic site cleaning during the contract period. Place waste material in appropriate storage pending removal from the site. Keep food waste separate from construction waste.

1.57 TRADE CLEANING

Keep the work area clean, remove of all debris, unused and temporary materials and elements from the site as work progresses and on completion. Refer to individual work sections for any specific requirements.

**Remove protection**

1.58 REMOVE PROTECTION

Remove all temporary markings, labels, packaging and coverings to products unless instructed otherwise, or where they are required for protection.

Maintain temporary protection until removal is required by the manufacturer/supplier, the execution of the work or the requirements of individual work sections. Re-establish protection as necessary.

Remove temporary protection and special protection immediately prior to practical completion or before when there is no further risk of damage.

Refer to individual work sections for any special removal requirements.

**Completion**

1.59 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Refer to individual work sections for any special completion requirements.

1.60 LEAVE WORK

Leave work to the standard required for the following procedures.

1.61 COMPLETION - TESTS & CERTIFICATION

Carry out tests as detailed in the work sections. If testing identifies a failure to meet performance requirements, notify the contract administrator and any nominated recipient, identify and correct the cause of failure and repeat the test. Submit test results and certification documentation to the contract administrator and any nominated recipient.

1.62 REMOVE CONSTRUCTION WASTE

Remove all debris, unused materials and the like from the site. Arrange for material to be recycled to be collected or delivered to the recycler.

1.63 COMPLETE ALL SERVICES

Ensure all services are complete and operational, with all temporary labelling removed, required labelling fixed and service instructions provided.

1.64 CLEANING BY CONTRACTOR

Clear the contract works of all construction materials, waste, dirt and debris. Clean the contract works including:

- Wipe all surfaces to remove construction dust.
- Clean out service ducts and accessible concealed spaces.
- Clean out all gutters and rainwater heads.
- Wipe dust from both sides of glass. Take particular care when removing paint or cementitious materials to not damage the glass. Do not use metal scrappers that may damage the glass.
- Remove adhesive residue left by labels and other temporary protection/markings.
- Clean out the interior of all cabinetry.
- Wash down external concrete including driveways and concrete masonry. Take care when waterblasting to not cause damage to the surface or allow water to enter the building.
- Remove rubbish and building material from the area immediately adjacent to the contract works.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Commissioning**

1.65 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Refer to individual work sections for any special commissioning requirements.

1.66 MOVING PARTS

Adjust, ease and lubricate all doors, windows, drawers, hardware, appliances, controls and all moving parts to give easy and efficient operation.

1.67 COMMISSIONING - TESTS & CERTIFICATION

Carry out tests as detailed in the work sections. If testing identifies a failure to meet performance requirements, notify the contract administrator and any nominated recipient, identify and correct the cause of failure and repeat the test. Submit test results and certification documentation to the contract administrator and any nominated recipient.

1.68 INSTRUCTION AND DEMONSTRATION

Provide instruction and demonstration to the owner/occupier to the extent that is listed below and as required for them to reasonably occupy and use the building. This is to include at least the following:

- Location and isolation of all services connections.
- Operation of all emergency systems.
- Locking and security arrangements.
- Operation of basic building services including lighting, heating, mechanical ventilation, air conditioning and security.
- Special cleaning requirements and procedures.
- Any other features that the owner/occupier needs to know about.

1.69 SECURITY AT COMPLETION

Remove any temporary lock cylinders and complete final keying prior to handing over keys to the principal on completion of the works. Leave the works secure with all accesses locked. Account for all keys/cards/codes and hand to the principal along with an itemised schedule, retaining a duplicate schedule signed by the principal as a receipt.

**Practical completion submission**

1.70 ADDITIONAL PRACTICAL COMPLETION INFORMATION

In addition to requirements in the contract and contained elsewhere in the specification provide the following information submissions for practical completion:

- All documents which the contractor has obtained on behalf of the owner/occupier.
- Information required by the owner/occupier to be able to use the building.
- Advice that NUO accounts in the contractor's name have been closed and as appropriate changed to be in the name of the owner/occupier.
- A list of persons to be contacted to carry out any emergency or remedial work including 24 hour/7 day contact details.

**Defects period submissions**

1.71 DEFECTS REMEDIATION - SUBMISSIONS

Provide the following at periods required by the contract administrator, where no period is stated, provide this information monthly:

- A copy of the contractor's check list identifying remaining defects and omissions to be completed recording progress made in completing and correcting the items.
- A copy of lists issued by the principal/employer identifying omissions and defects recording progress made in completing and correcting the items.
- A copy of lists issued by the contract administrator identifying omissions and minor defects recording progress made in completing and correcting the items.

**Completion submissions**

1.72 FINAL COMPLETION - SUBMISSIONS

In addition to requirements in the contract and contained elsewhere in the specification provide:

- Contractors advice that all defects have been corrected and omissions and deferred work completed.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- All documents which the contractor has obtained on behalf of the owner/occupier.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 2210 PREPARATION & GROUNDWORK

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the clearance, excavation and backfilling of the site area in preparation for:

- footings and floor slabs
- backfilling behind basement retaining walls

### Documents

1.1 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| WorkSafe | Good Practice Guidelines - Excavation Safety |

1.2 SITE SAFETY

Provide adequate support for all excavations. Cover holes and fence off open trenches and banks.

1.3 ARCHAEOLOGICAL DISCOVERY

If fossils, antiquities and other items of value are found refer to the general section 1220 PROJECT for actions to be taken with archaeological discovery.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EXCAVATED CLEAN FILL

Clean, free of contamination, mineral soil from other formations in the excavation which may be selected and approved as suitable for filling by having grading and moisture content properties that will allow recompaction to 95% of maximum density.

2.2 VOLCANIC TUFF FILL

Scoriaceous tuff of variable grading excluding excessive silt or clay material, capable of being placed and compacted as specified.

2.3 ROCK FILL

Hard material comprising rock, broken stone, hard brick, concrete, run of pit scoria, or other comparable inert material capable of being placed and compacted as specified.

2.4 SAND FILL

Clean sand of such grading in particle size to achieve mechanical compaction to 90% maximum density.

2.5 HARD FILL

Scoria or crushed rock to GAP (General All Passing) 40 grading.

2.6 GRANULAR FILL

Approved screened crushed gravel or scoria, graded in size from 20mm to 7mm, clean. When tested with a standard sieve of 4.75 opening no material is to pass.

2.7 DRESSING COURSE

Scoria to GAP 20 grading, or "dirty footpath scoria", or equivalent "all in" graded crushed metal aggregate.

2.8 FREE-DRAINING AGGREGATE

Scoria or crushed gravel graded 50 to 14 clean.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 WASHOUT BAY FOR TRUCK

Provide a designated area for trucks to be washed down to avoid mud and dirt being carried off site.

### 3.2 EXCAVATION GENERALLY

Carry out excavation, using plant suitable for the purpose, to the guidelines set by the WorkSafe, Good Practice Guidelines - Excavation Safety.

### 3.3 BURNING OF MATERIALS

Burning of materials is not permitted on site.

### 3.4 PROTECT EXISTING WORK

Protect from damage existing buildings, structures, roads, paving and services nominated on the drawings as being retained.

### 3.5 EROSION CONTROL

Ensure measures are in place to contain silt dislodged as a result of water infiltration and to prevent it being carried off site with stormwater.

### 3.6 SURFACE PREPARATION

Comply with NZS 3604, section 3.5, **Site preparation**. Remove all turf, vegetation, trees, topsoil, stumps, uncontrolled fill and rubbish from the area to be built on.

### 3.7 STOCKPILE TOPSOIL

Stockpile excavated topsoil on site where directed. Keep separate from other excavated materials. Spread and level where directed before completion of the works.

### 3.8 SHORING AND UNDERPINNING

Carry out shoring and underpinning shown on the drawings and as necessary to prevent subsidence of adjoining public or private property and to ensure the safety of the public and site personnel. Maintain protection throughout the progress of the works, or until foundations and subgrade structures have been completed and the stability of adjoining public and private property secured.

### 3.9 GENERAL EXCAVATION

Trim ground to required profiles, batters, falls and levels. Remove loose material. Protect cut faces from collapse. Keep excavations free from water.

### 3.10 ROCK EXCAVATION

If rock is found at any level above the underside of the structural foundations, or above required base levels for site service trenches, immediately notify the owner. Obtain written instructions from the owner on the proposed approach to rock excavation, or consequent alterations to subgrade construction. Confirm any changes with the territorial authority.

### 3.11 FOUNDATION EXCAVATION

Take foundation excavations to depths shown. Keep trenches plumb and straight, bottoms level and free of soft spots, stepped as detailed and clean and free of water.

### 3.12 INADEQUATE BEARING

If localised bearing is not to NZS 3604, 3.1.2 **Foundations** and 3.1.3 **Determination of good ground**, then excavate further and backfill with material as follows:

- Below slabs on grade: Hardfill compacted in 150mm layers
- Below footings: 10 MPa concrete

If excavation exceeds the required depths, backfill and compact to the correct level with material as listed.
Confirm any changes with the territorial authority.
For inadequate bearing or over excavation of service trenches, use hardfill compacted in 150mm layers.

### 3.13 STANDARD OF COMPACTION

Place fill in layers of not more than 150mm and compact to achieve 95% of maximum dry density. For granular fill material, the fill shall be compacted to 80% of saturated dry density.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.14 GRANULAR BASE FOR SLABS

To conform to NZS 3604, section 7.5.3, **Granular base**. Consolidate with a vibrating roller. Blind the surface with 20mm of coarse sand or sand/cement and roll ready to receive a damp-proof membrane.

3.15 GENERAL BACKFILLING

Obtain written confirmation from the owner before using any excavated material. Compact approved backfilling in 150mm layers with the last 200mm in clean topsoil, lightly compacted and neatly finished off.

3.16 RETAINING WALLS

Backfill behind retaining walls with free draining granular material and compact in 200mm layers. Ensure any tanking membranes, protection sheets, drain coil and damp-proofing are not damaged.

3.17 SURPLUS MATERIAL

Remove surplus and excavated material from the site.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 2310 FOUNDATIONS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to all foundation and piling work, with the exception of in situ concrete work and concrete masonry.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 2362 FOUNDATION WALLS for concrete and masonry foundation walls.

Refer to 3101 CONCRETE WORK - BASIC for concrete slab and related combined footings, DPM etc

Refer to Concrete Masonry section for concrete block foundation walls.

### Documents

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZS 3104 | Specification for concrete production |
| NZS 3109 | Concrete construction |
| NZS 3602 | Timber and wood-based products for use in building |
| NZS 3603 | Timber structures standard |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 3605 | Timber piles and poles for use in buildings |

### Performance

1.3 INSPECTIONS

Give notice to Engineer and contract administrator, at least 24 hours prior to foundation inspection being required. At inspection foundation to be clear of obstructions like, backfill, site concrete and reinforcing.

1.4 NOTE

This specification is to be read in conjunction with the Structural Engineer's specifications. Where there is conflict between this specification and the Structural Engineer's specification, the Structural Engineer's specification shall override this specification. If in doubt, both the Architect and the Engineer shall be contacted to resolve the issue.

## 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TIMBER SUB-FLOOR FRAMING

Species, grade, moisture content in service and level of treatment as set out in NZS 3602. Grading to NZS 3603 and treated to NZS 3602, table 1C.

2.2 NAILS

Steel, stainless steel and galvanized steel of pattern to NZS 3604, table 6.6 **Nailing schedule for hand-driven and power-driven nails** and section 4 Durability.

2.3 BOLTS

Steel, stainless steel, and galvanized steel to NZS 3604.
Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.4 NAIL PLATES

Stainless steel and galvanized steel toothed or nailed steel plates to the plate manufacturer's design for the particular locations shown on the drawings.

2.5 CORROSION RISKS

For exterior timber, timber in damp areas and timber subject to occasional wetting, use only stainless steel (or equivalent) fixings and connectors, when the timber is treated with; Copper Azole (CuAz, Preservative code 58), Alkaline Copper Quaternary (ACQ, Preservative code 90), Micronise Copper Azole (code 88) or Micronised Copper Quaternary (code 89).


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FOUNDATIONS GENERALLY

Comply with NZS 3109, 3602 and NZS 3604 except as varied by this specification. Execution to include those methods, practices and processes contained in the unit standards for the National Certificate in Carpentry and the National Certificate in Joinery (cabinetry, exterior joinery, stairs).

3.2 EXCAVATIONS

Refer to 2210 PREPARATION AND GROUNDWORK.

3.3 SUB-FLOOR FRAMING

Frame up off foundation walls and piles, all fabricated, fastened and braced to NZS 3604, section 6, **Foundation and subfloor framing**.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 2362 FOUNDATION WALLS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of concrete and concrete masonry foundation walls to NZS 3604, including;

- formwork, reinforcement, concrete mixes and the placing of concrete
- concrete masonry, mortar, reinforcement and grouting
- separate concrete masonry foundation walls supporting concrete slabs

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 2361 STRIP FOOTINGS for simple strip footings.

Refer to the appropriate timber framing section for sub-floor timber framing.
Refer to concrete sections for concrete slab and related combined footings, DPM etc.

### 1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following definitions apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| ACRS | Australian Certification Authority for Reinforcing Steels - An independent certification scheme for reinforcing steel and structural steel, by product and manufacturer/processor. Certifies compliance with Australia/New Zealand Standards.<br>ACRS Web site - www.steelcertification.com |

### 1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC B1/AS1 | Structural provisions for buildings |
| NZS 3101.1 | Concrete structures standard |
| NZS 3103 | Sands for mortars and plasters |
| NZS 3104 | Specification for concrete production |
| NZS 3109 | Concrete construction |
| NZS 3114 | Specification for concrete surface finishes |
| NZS 3121 | Water and aggregate for concrete |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 4210 | Masonry construction: Materials and workmanship |
| NZS 4229 | Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design |
| AS/NZS 4455.1 | Masonry units, pavers, flags, and segmental retaining wall units - Masonry units |
| AS/NZS 4671 | Steel reinforcing materials |

**Requirements**

### 1.4 QUALIFICATIONS - MASONRY WORK

Carry out all masonry work with people competent and experienced in this type of work, under the supervision of a suitably qualified tradesperson as required in NZS 4210. All work to be installed or supervised by a Registered Mason or licensed building practitioner (LBP): Licensed for Bricklaying and Blocklaying : Structural Masonry. RBW must be supervised by an LBP. Concrete workers to be experienced, competent and familiar with the materials and the techniques specified.

### 1.5 CONSTRUCTION CONTROL MASONRY

Supervise masonry construction to NZS 4230, table 3.1, Observation Type C, admissible use and nominal strengths. Keep records of materials to NZS 4210, 2.4.2.

The mason is to certify in writing to the owner that the masonry observation and work has been carried out in accordance with the relevant NZ Standards. Provide a Producer Statement - Construction (PS3).


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.6 STEEL REINFORCING COMPLIANCE

Steel reinforcing materials for concrete to AS/NZS 4671. Steel to be manufactured in New Zealand, or by an overseas manufacturer holding a current valid (or equivalent) NZ S Mark or ACRS certificate for that type of steel. Confirm compliance and provide evidence if requested.

1.7 QUALITY RECORDS

Keep accurate records relating to strength and quality of materials used in the construction, and make the information available to the Building Consent Authority inspector on request.

Do not place concrete/grout until all excavations, formwork/blockwork and reinforcing have been inspected and passed by the Building Consent Authority.

1.8 NOTE

This specification is to be read in conjunction with the Structural Engineer's specifications. Where there is conflict between this specification and the Structural Engineer's specification, the Structural Engineer's specification shall override this specification. If in doubt, both the Architect and the Engineer shall be contacted to resolve the issue.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### General

2.1 REINFORCEMENT

To AS/NZS 4671, 300E deformed mild steel except for ties in plain round mild steel and as detailed. Refer to Concrete section for reinforcing for slabs.

2.2 TYING WIRE

Mild drawn steel wire not less than 1.2mm diameter.

2.3 WATER

To NZS 3121. Water from a territorial authority/NUO water supply is acceptable.

### Concrete masonry

2.4 MASONRY UNITS

To AS/NZS 4455.1.

2.5 MORTAR

Sand to NZS 3103. Chloride levels to not exceed 0.04% by dry weight of sand. Mortar to NZS 4210, section 2.2, **Mortar**. Compressive strength of not less than 12.5 MPa.

2.6 GROUT

To NZS 4210, section 2.3, **Grout**.

## 3 EXECUTION

### General

3.1 GENERAL PARAMETERS

Foundation walls to NZS 3604, 6.11**, Foundation walls....** and masonry foundation walls under slabs to NZS 3604, 7.5, **Concrete slab-on-ground floors .....** and NZBC B1/AS1, 2.3 **Timber**.

3.2 STORAGE

Handle and store reinforcing steel and accessories without damage or contamination. Store on timber fillets on hard ground in a secure area clear of any building operation. Lay steel fabric flat.

Ensure reinforcement is clean and remains clean so that at the time of placing concrete it is free of all loose mill scale, loose rust and any other contamination that may reduce bonding capacity.

3.3 STARTER POSITIONS

Before commencing , check the location of starter reinforcement. Do not correct misplacement by cranking bars. Where misplacement exceeds the location tolerance, obtain written direction before proceeding.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.4 REINFORCEMENT

Reinforce walls to NZS 3604, **6.11 Foundation walls....**

Cut and bend bars using proper bending tools to avoid notching and to the requirements of NZS 3109. Do not rebend bars. Where rebending is approved, use a purpose built tool, proper preparation and preheating.

3.5 REINFORCEMENT LAPS

To NZS 3604, 6.11.7, **Foundation wall reinforcement**. Horizontal reinforcing bars lapped 500mm minimum.

To NZS 4229, 6.6.3, 40 diameter laps for deformed bars.
Tie all lapping bars to each other.

3.6 COVER

Cover for reinforcement to NZS 3604, 4.5.1 for minimum concrete cover and NZS 3604, 4.5.3 for concrete masonry. For general purpose minimum 50mm cover, or varied to suit exposure conditions. Minimum cover 75mm for walls against earth.

3.7 OPENINGS

Reinforcing around openings to NZS 3604, 6.11.7.3, for opening over 300mm wide and for concrete or masonry lintels up to 600mm wide.

Form 600mm wide subfloor access point as shown on the drawings.

3.8 BRACING

Provide adequate temporary lateral bracing to ensure stability until the final supporting construction is in place and has cured sufficiently.

3.9 BUILD IN

Build in plugs, bolts, ties, metal flashings, dowels, fastenings and fixings as required by all trades and as shown on the drawings.

3.10 FIXINGS FOR WALL PLATES - NON PROPRIETARY

For sub-floor wall plates allow for cast-in galvanised M12 bolts and washer or R10 dowels to NZS 3604, 6.11.9.1, as stated in SELECTIONS or as shown on the drawings. Use only M12 bolts for fixing ends of bearers to NZS 3604, 6.12.1, **Securing**.

Locate fixings within 300mm of the ends of the plate, and maximum 1.4m centres for bolts and 900mm centres for dowels. Ensure subfloor or wall braces have at least 2 x bolts per length of plate.

3.11 FIXINGS FOR BOTTOM PLATES - NON PROPRIETARY

For bottom plates for walls, allow for cast-in galvanised M12 bolts and washer to NZS 3604, 7.5.12.1, as stated in SELECTIONS or as shown on the drawings.

Locate fixings within 150mm of the ends of the plate, and maximum 1200mm centres. Set bolt 90mm into concrete or 120mm into concrete with masonry blocks; set 50mm in from outside face.

3.12 PROPRIETARY FIXINGS FOR WALL PLATES AND BOTTOM PLATES

Allow for proprietary plate fixings/anchors and install to manufacturer's instructions, as stated in SELECTIONS or as shown on the drawings.

Locate fixings to NZS 3604, 7.5.12.2, within 150mm of the ends of the plate, and maximum 900mm centres or 600mm centres for slab edges of masonry header blocks. Ensure subfloor braces have at least 2 x fixings per length of plate. All braced elements to manufacturer's specific requirements. Drilled in expanding bolts are generally not acceptable.

**Concrete masonry**

3.13 MASONRY CONSTRUCTION GENERALLY

To NZS 4210 and NZS 3604, **6.11 Foundation walls (concrete and concrete masonry)**.
Minimum wall widths, 140mm single storey and 190mm for 1 to 2 storeys and masonry veneer.
Wall widths are also subject to minimum reinforcing cover requirements, refer COVER.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.14 DURABILITY

Ensure that, mortar, built in components and reinforcement cover are to NZS 4210, table 2.E1 Masonry durability requirements, for the location and the Exposure Zone in the general section 1220 PROJECT. To use the table, exposure zones in NZS 3604 comparable with NZS 3101.1 (in brackets) are;

Zone D (B2), Zone C (B1), Zone B (A2), Closed Interior (A1), Walls against earth (B2), Geothermal hotspots (U), and NZBC E2/AS1 Zone E (C).

3.15 MOISTURE CONTENT

Store masonry units clear of the ground, under cover and well ventilated until placed in the work. Ensure masonry units are air dry prior to laying.

3.16 CHECK BASE CONCRETE

Ensure the base concrete is true to line and level, requiring a base mortar bed of 10mm (minimum) to 20mm (maximum). Ensure that all laitance, loose aggregate, or anything preventing bond is removed prior to laying masonry units.

3.17 TOLERANCES

Construct within the tolerances set out in NZS 4210, clause 2.6.5, Tolerances, and clause 2.7.1, General. Lay masonry units with bedding of consistent thickness throughout.

3.18 PROTECTION

Protect fair-faced masonry walls, keeping them clear of mortar droppings, grout splashes, or stains of any kind.

3.19 LAY MASONRY UNITS

Ensure consistent, fully filled and tooled joints. Where walls are reinforced, prevent mortar droppings from entering the cells to be grouted. Provide clean out holes at base of wall, unless "low lift" (NZS 4210) grouting is used. Ensure reinforcement is accurately placed and tied. Lay in regular stretcher bond with all necessary special units. Cut masonry, if necessary, true and square without chipping.

Mortar joints not exceeding 10mm thick, or less than 8mm when the units are bedded in. Joints tooled concave, unless detailed otherwise.

3.20 VERTICAL CONTROL JOINTS

Locate at major changes of wall height or thickness, at openings, and at not more than the centres scheduled below to NZS 4210 2.10.1.2(c), or, as shown on the drawings. Where reinforcement passes through a control joint, provide for breaking bond using methods detailed on NZS 4210, figure 2, Control joint, unless specifically detailed otherwise.

Spacing of control joints schedule

| HEIGHT OF WALL | HORIZONTAL SPACING OF JOINTS |
|---|---|
| up to 800mm | 24m maximum |
| up to 1.2m | 12m maximum |
| up to 2m | 8m maximum |

3.21 PRE-GROUTING INSPECTION

Inspect walls prior to grouting. Ensure cells are clean and reinforcement is correctly placed. Where "high lift" (to NZS 4210) grouting is used, seal the clean out holes and brace to prevent blow outs.

3.22 GROUT CELLS

Grout all masonry unit cells.

Use procedures set out in NZS 4210. Methods acceptable on this project are:

- high lift grouting with expansive admixture
- high lift grouting with reduced compaction, without expansive admixture
- low lift grouting.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Completion**

3.23 PROGRESSIVE CLEANING

Clean off mortar splashes and concrete/grout spills as they occur, making good any damage at the same time.

3.24 FINAL CLEANING

Clean down exposed walls and remove waste material from adjoining surfaces and floors at completion.

3.25 REMOVE

Remove from the site materials not used.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 3101 CONCRETE WORK - BASIC

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to formwork, reinforcement, concrete mixes and the placing of concrete.

1.1 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

The following definitions apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| ACRS | Australian Certification Authority for Reinforcing Steels - An independent certification scheme for reinforcing steel and structural steel, by product and manufacturer/processor. Certifies compliance with Australia/New Zealand Standards. |

ACRS web site - www.steelcertification.com

**Documents**

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC B1/AS1 | Structural provisions for buildings |
| NZBC E2/AS3 | External moisture provisions for concrete and concrete masonry buildings |
| AS 1366.3 | Rigid cellular plastics for thermal insulation - Rigid cellular polystyrene - Moulded (RC/PS - M) |
| NZS 3101.1 | Concrete structures standard |
| NZS 3104 | Specification for concrete production |
| NZS 3109 | Concrete construction |
| NZS 3114 | Specification for concrete surface finishes |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 4229 | Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design |
| AS/NZS 4671 | Steel reinforcing materials |
| AS/NZS 4858 | Wet area membranes |
| CCANZ CP 01 | Code of practice for weathertight concrete and concrete masonry construction |

**Requirements**

1.3 QUALIFICATIONS

Workers to be experienced, competent trades people familiar with the materials and techniques specified.

1.4 STEEL REINFORCING COMPLIANCE

Steel reinforcing materials for concrete to AS/NZS 4671. Steel to be manufactured in New Zealand, or by an overseas manufacturer holding a current valid (or equivalent) NZ S Mark or ACRS certificate for that type of steel. Confirm compliance and provide evidence if requested.

1.5 NOTE

This specification is to be read in conjunction with the Structural Engineer's specifications. Where there is conflict between this specification and the Structural Engineer's specification, the Structural Engineer's specification shall override this specification. If in doubt, both the Architect and the Engineer shall be contacted to resolve the issue.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 NORMAL CONCRETE

Normal concrete 17.5 to 50 MPa grade, (refer to SELECTIONS), maximum aggregate size 19mm ready-mixed to NZS 3104. Provide delivery dockets listing mix and despatch details.

2.2 SITE CONCRETE

Concrete 10 MPa with minimum water for workability, all materials and batching to NZS 3104, table 3.1, Prescribed mixes (P).

2.3 MASS CONCRETE

Concrete having a minimum strength of 10 MPa at 28 days

2.4 REINFORCEMENT

Bars to AS/NZS 4671. Grade 300E deformed, other than for ties, stirrups and spirals, unless shown otherwise on the drawings. Welded reinforcing mesh Class E to AS/NZS 4671, and 500E mesh to AS/NZS 4671.

2.5 MESH FOR SLABS TO NZS 3604 OR NZS 4229

For slabs on ground mesh to be welded reinforcing mesh to AS/NZS 4671, Class E, minimum to B1/AS1 - Grade 500E, 2.27kg/m2 (1.14kg/m2 in each direction).

2.6 TYING WIRE

Mild drawn steel wire not less than 1.2mm diameter.

2.7 SPACERS AND CHAIRS

Precast concrete or purpose made moulded PVC to approval. Where concrete spacer blocks are used in exposed concrete work use blocks matching surrounding concrete.

2.8 DAMP-PROOF MEMBRANE

0.25mm minimum polyethylene to NZS 3604, 7.5.4, Damp-proof membrane.

2.9 CELLULAR POLYSTYRENE INSULATION

Proprietary expanded polystyrene (EPS) foam board to AS 1366.3.

### Accessories

2.10 WATERPROOFING FOR EXTERIOR OPENINGS

Unreinforced wet area membrane to AS/NZS 4858 for waterproofing around openings for windows, doors, meters and other services openings, at or above floor level, also parapets and ends of masonry walls abutting other claddings to CCANZ CP 01. Refer to SELECTIONS.

Do not use bituminous coatings.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANDLE AND STORE

Handle and store reinforcing steel and accessories without damage or contamination. Store on timber fillets on hard ground in a secure area clear of any building operation. Lay steel fabric flat.

Ensure reinforcement is clean and remains clean so that at the time of placing concrete it is free of all loose mill scale, loose rust and any other contamination that may reduce bonding capacity.

### 3.2 OVER EXCAVATION

Contact the contract administrator for direction if more than minor over excavation below designed for founding levels is required.

### 3.3 FALSEWORK AND FORMWORK

Use falsework and formwork of sufficient strength to retain and support the wet concrete to the required profiles and tolerances. Select formwork finish to produce the specified finished quality. Ensure timber or plywood used for formwork is non-staining to the set concrete.

Securely fix and brace formwork sufficiently to support loads and with joints and linings tight enough to prevent water loss. Do not use tie wires or rods unless approved in writing by the Contract Administrator. Unless detailed otherwise, provide a 19mm chamfer or fillet strip at all interior and exterior angles of beam and column forms. Mitre at intersections.

Water blast to clean formwork. Keep formwork wet before concrete is placed.

Unless detailed otherwise, set up soffit boxing for beams and slabs to provide a camber when forms are stripped, of 3mm rise for every 3 metres of total clear span.

### 3.4 INSTALL DAMP-PROOF MEMBRANE

Apply polythene membrane to prepared basecourse with 150mm laps between sheets. Tape seal laps and penetrations with 50mm wide pressure sensitive plastic tape. Refer to drawings for perimeter details.

### 3.5 INSTALL CELLULAR POLYSTYRENE INSULATION

Install EPS insulation system to manufacturer's requirements.

### 3.6 CUT AND BEND REINFORCEMENT

Cut and bend bars using proper bending tools to avoid notching and to the requirements of NZS 3109: 3.3 Hooks and bends. Minimum radii of reinforcement bends to NZS 3109, table 3.1, Minimum radii of reinforcement bends. Do not rebend bars. Where rebending is approved, use a purpose built tool, proper preparation and preheating.

### 3.7 ADJUSTMENTS

Use a purpose built tool for on site bending and to deal with minor adjustments to steel reinforcement.

### 3.8 TOLERANCES, BENDING

To NZS 3109, 3.9, Tolerances for reinforcement.

### 3.9 SECURE REINFORCEMENT

Secure reinforcement adequately with tying wire and place, support and secure against displacement when concreting. Bend tying wire back well clear of the formwork. Spacing as dimensioned, or if not shown, to the clear distance minimums in NZS 3109, 3.6, Spacing of reinforcement.

### 3.10 LAPPED SPLICES

Length of laps where not dimensioned on the drawings in accordance with the SELECTIONS. Provide laps only where indicated on the drawings. Tie all lapping bars to each other. Plain bars lapped splices must be hooked.
Wire mesh laps to NZS 3101.1, lap one mesh square plus 50mm minimum (do not count bar extension beyond the outermost wire).

### 3.11 MESH LAPS FOR SLABS TO NZS 3604 OR NZS 4229


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

For slabs on ground the welded reinforcing mesh to be lapped such that the outermost wires overlap by the greater of:

- the spacing of the cross wires plus 50mm
- 150mm or
- manufacturer's requirements

Do not count bar extensions beyond the outermost cross wire.

3.12 REINFORCEMENT COVER TO NZS 3101.1

Minimum cover to all reinforcing bars, stirrups, ties and spirals, as shown on drawings. Where cover is not shown on drawings provide minimum cover to NZS 3101.1, table 3.6, **Minimum required cover for a specified intended life of 50 years**. Sub-soil cover to NZS 3101.1, to suit soil and groundwater conditions. Fix chairs for top reinforcement in slabs at 1.0 metre centres or to ensure adequate support. Cover tolerances to NZS 3109, 3.9, Tolerances for reinforcement.

3.13 REINFORCEMENT COVER TO NZS 3604 OR NZS 4229

For in-situ concrete, foundations and interior slabs on ground, to NZS 3604 or NZS 4229, the reinforcement and welded mesh cover to be:

| **Location, cover to** | **NZS 3604** | **NZS 4229** |
|---|---|---|
| Footing, to earth | 75mm | 75mm |
| Footing, to DPM | 75mm | 50mm |
| Foundation, to edge | 75mm | 75mm |
| Slab, to slab top | 30mm | 30mm |
| Slab, to slab edge | 50mm to 75mm | 50mm to 75mm |

3.14 EQUIPOTENTIAL BONDING REINFORCING

If it is a project requirement, ensure that reinforcing is electrically equipotential bonded (or at least conductor cable attached) before the concrete is poured. For bonded reinforcing ensure all reinforcing is interconnected with good contact at joints and tight conductive ties.

3.15 CASTING IN

Build in all grounds, bolts and fixings for wall plates and bracing elements, holding down bolts, pipes, sleeves and fixings as required by all trades and as shown on the drawings, prior to pouring the concrete.

Do not use grounds exceeding 100mm in length. Location and form of conduits to be approved in writing by the Contract Administrator. Minimum cover 40mm. Do not encase aluminium items in concrete. Do not paint steel embedded items more than 25mm into the concrete encasement. Cut back form ties to specified cover and fill the cavities with mortar.

Form all pockets, chases and flashing grooves as required by all trades and as shown on the drawings.

Wrap all pipes embedded in concrete with tape to break the bond and to accommodate expansion. Do not embed pipes for conveying liquids exceeding a temperature of 50°C in concrete.

3.16 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

Locate and construct as shown on the drawings or in accordance with NZS 3109, 5.6, Type B.

3.17 PRE-PLACEMENT INSPECTION

Do not place concrete until all excavations, boxing and reinforcing have been inspected and passed by the Building Consent Authority.

3.18 SURFACE FINISHES

To NZS 3114, 105, Specification of finishes, as scheduled or as denoted on the drawings.

3.19 CONCRETE SURFACE TOLERANCES

To NZS 3114, 104, Surface tolerances and NZS 3114, 105, Specification of finishes, with the suggested tolerances becoming the required tolerances.

3.20 PUMPING CONCRETE


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Set up and supervise pump operation, placing and compaction of the mix to NZS 3109, 7.4, Handling and placing and NZS 3109, 7.6, Compaction Advise the ready-mix supplier of the type of pump and the slump required, in addition to the concrete grade, strength and quantity.

3.21 COMPACTION

Use power operated vibrators on foundations, vertical constructions and beams.

3.22 FLOOR SLABS TO NZS 4229

Generally for slabs on ground to NZS 4229 as modified by NZBC B1/AS1 and NZBC E2/AS3.

Construct to NZS 4229, 6, **Footings** and NZS 4229, 7, **Foundation walls and concrete slab-on-ground** as modified by NZBC B1/AS1, 2.1 **Masonry**. Lay to true and straight surfaces, screeded, floated and steel (manual or power) trowelled finish. Tolerance on flatness: maximum 3mm gradual deviation over a 3 metre straight-edge, to NZS 3114, 304, **Surface tolerances**.
Allow for free joints maximum 18m centres to NZS 4229, 7.8.5.3 **Free joints**.

3.23 SAW CUTS TO NZS 3604 OR NZS 4229

Cut slabs where indicated on the drawings as required to control shrinkage cracking. Form by saw cutting the slab (blade width approximately 5 mm) to a quarter of the depth of the slab after it has hardened (saw cutting shall take place no later than 24 hours after initial set for average ambient temperatures above 20 ºC, and 48 hours for average ambient temperatures below 20ºC).

3.24 SAW CUTS

Cut slabs where indicated on the drawings and as required to control shrinkage cracking. Carry out cutting as soon as possible, without causing tear-out of aggregate and before shrinkage cracking has occurred, generally within 24 hours of pouring.

3.25 SPACING OF SAW CUTS

Spacing of sawcuts

| Floor situation | Maximum spacing of sawcuts both ways |
|---|---|
| Industrial floor | 5m |
| Architectural, exposed floor, thin finishes, rigid finishes | 4m |
| Carpet on underlay flooring | 6m |

3.26 SURFACE DEFECTS

Make good surface defects immediately after forms are stripped. Make good hollows or bony areas with 1:2 mortar or plaster, finished to the same tolerances as the parent concrete. Fill any tie rod holes with 1:2 mortar.

3.27 CURING OF CONCRETE

Keep damp for not less than seven days. Ensure curing of slabs commences as soon as possible after final finishing, by the use of continuous water sprays, or ponding. Alternately, apply a curing membrane. Ensure any membrane used will not affect subsequent applied finishes.

3.28 STRIKE FORMWORK

Strike formwork without damaging or overloading structure. Do not remove formwork before the following minimum periods:

| | |
|---|---|
| 12 hours: | Sides of beams, walls and columns |
| 4 days: | Slabs in beam and slab construction (leave props under slab spans over 2 metres) |
| 10 days: | Props from under slab spans over 2 metres |
| 18 days: | Beams, soffits and slab spans over 5 metres |

3.29 WATERPROOFING EXTERIOR OPENINGS

Apply waterproofing to the exposed face of openings for, windows, doors, meters etc, also if necessary the top of parapets/balustrades and ends of masonry walls abutting other claddings. To CCANZ CP 01, waterproofing manufacturer's requirements and as detailed.

Provide temporary protection from direct sunlight.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.30 CLEAN OUT

Clean out saw cuts. Fill with cement grout where the floor will be covered with carpet or vinyl.

3.31 REMOVE

Remove all unused materials and all concrete and reinforcing debris from the site.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 3155 RAFT FLOOR SYSTEM

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to a raft floor system, a non specific design reinforced concrete waffle raft floor slab-on-ground.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 3101 CONCRETE WORK - BASIC for concrete work outside of raft floor.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following definitions apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| ACRS | Australian Certification Authority for Reinforcing Steels - An independent certification scheme for reinforcing steel and structural steel, by product and manufacturer/processor. Certifies compliance with Australia/New Zealand Standards.<br>ACRS Web site - www.steelcertification.com |

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Documents referred to in this section are:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC B1/AS1 | Structural provisions for buildings |
| NZBC B1/VM1 | Structural design of buildings |
| NZS 3104 | Specification for concrete production |
| NZS 3109 | Concrete construction |
| NZS 3114 | Specification for concrete surface finishes |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 3631 | New Zealand timber grading rules |
| NZS 4229 | Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design |
| AS/NZS 4671 | Steel reinforcing materials |

Documents listed above and cited in the clauses that follow are part of this specification. However, this specification takes precedence in the event of it being at variance with the cited document.

### Requirements

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Tradespeople to be competent, experienced and familiar with the raft floor system materials and techniques specified.

1.5 STEEL REINFORCING COMPLIANCE

Steel reinforcing materials for concrete to AS/NZS 4671. Steel to be manufactured in New Zealand, or by an overseas manufacturer holding a current valid (or equivalent) NZ S Mark or ACRS certificate for that type of steel. Confirm compliance and provide evidence if requested.

1.6 QUALITY RECORDS

Keep accurate records relating to strength and quality of materials used during construction. Include records of workmanship during construction and photographs of as-built details. Make the information available to the Building Consent Authority inspector on request.

### Performance

1.7 NOTE

This specification is to be read in conjunction with the Structural Engineer's specifications. Where there is conflict between this specification and the Structural Engineer's specification, the Structural Engineer's specification shall override this specification. If in doubt, both the Architect and the Engineer shall be contacted to resolve the issue.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 BLINDING

50mm maximum compacted GAP 7.

2.2 TIMBER FORMWORK

No. 2 framing and dressing or merchantable grade radiata pine boards to NZS 3631.

2.3 DAMP-PROOF MEMBRANE

0.25mm minimum polyethylene to NZS 3604: clause 7.5.4, Damp-proof membrane (DPM). Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.4 POLYSTYRENE PODS

Proprietary purpose made polystyrene pods.

2.5 REINFORCEMENT

Bars to AS/NZS 4671. Grade 500E deformed, other than for ties, stirrups and spirals, unless shown otherwise on the drawings.

2.6 INTERNAL CORNER REINFORCEMENT

Minimum 2 x D10 bars Grade 300E to AS/NZS 4671.

2.7 MESH

Welded reinforcing mesh to AS/NZS 4671, generally, Class E, minimum to NZBC B1/AS1 - Grade 500E, 2.27kg/m2 (1.14kg/m2 in each direction). Minimum SE62 500E mesh or the equivalent.

2.8 TYING WIRE

Mild drawn steel wire not less than 1.2mm diameter.

2.9 CONCRETE - RAFT APPLICATIONS

20 MPa 100mm slump mix in either 13mm or 19mm nominal aggregate size.

2.10 NORMAL CONCRETE - NON RAFT APPLICATIONS

Normal concrete 20 MPa grade, maximum aggregate size 19mm to NZS 3104.

### Components

2.11 SPACERS

Proprietary spacers. Refer to SELECTIONS for size.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 STORAGE

Take delivery of and accept all materials and accessories dry and undamaged. Store on timber fillets on hard ground protected from weather, contamination and damage in a secure area clear of any building operation.

Handle and store reinforcing steel and accessories without damage or contamination. Ensure reinforcement is clean and remains clean so that at the time of placing concrete it is free of all loose mill scale, loose rust and any other contamination that may reduce bonding capacity. Store steel fabric flat.

3.2 HANDLING

Avoid distribution and contact with damaging substances. Do not drag sheets across each other and other materials. Protect edges and surface finishes from damage.

### Application - raft floor system

3.3 SITE CLEARANCE

Clear the slab area of any vegetation and topsoil down to the subgrade level.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.4 BUILDING PLATFORM

Create a building platform to a level surface approximately 330mm below finished floor level. Cut and/or fill sloping sites. Confirm finished floor level.

3.5 POST-CUT INSPECTION

Inspect and confirm that the soil conditions are as anticipated by the geotechnical investigation and report and conform to the requirements of the raft system supplier manual.

3.6 TEMPORARY BUILDING PLATFORM DRAINAGE

Construct suitable drainage to keep excessive ground water off the building platform during and after construction as required.

3.7 HARDFILL

Place hardfill and ensure it is spread and compacted with mechanical compaction.

3.8 UNDERGROUND SERVICES

Ensure underfloor services are installed in the subsoil or hardfill in locations as shown on the drawings and according to the raft floor system manufacturer's requirements.

3.9 BLINDING LAYER

Spread GAP 7 blinding layer to a minimum 500mm past the outside edge of the slab, compact to a level layer no greater than 50mm thick and no higher than 305mm below finished floor level.

3.10 FORMWORK

Construct formwork as required, well braced and tied to remain in position, straight and plumb during construction. Ensure formwork will provide for the topping depth, including rebates and the required concrete finish.

3.11 INSTALL DAMP-PROOF MEMBRANE

Apply DPM to the prepared basecourse extending to the outside of all edge beams or fold and staple up the inside of the formwork. Overlap all joints in the DPM sheets a minimum 150mm. Tape laps and penetrations with 50mm wide pressure sensitive plastic tape. Ensure DPM is not damaged during the construction process. Repair all damage to DPM before proceeding with following procedures.

3.12 PLACE POLYSTYRENE PODS

Place polystyrene pods in a regular waffle pattern using the spacers in the specified grid pattern to fit the floor plan. Cut pods on site with a saw or suitable hot wire as required. Cut holes for services and trim around piles as required on site.

3.13 INSTALL SPACERS

Install spacers and locations to the raft floor system manufacturer's requirements.

Form standard ribs between pods using 100mm spacers. Place the spacers at a minimum of one spacer along each edge of each pod or part pod. The ribs in both directions form a waffle pattern throughout the slab.

Form the edge beam using 300mm spacers. Place the spacers at 1200mm centres maximum along the perimeter of the slab at least and one spacer per pod or part pod.

Form ribs to support load bearing walls using 300mm spacers. Place the spacers at a minimum of one spacer along the edge of each pod or part pod.

3.14 PLACE REINFORCING STEEL: RIB STEEL

Place rib reinforcing steel in the bottom of the internal ribs and supported in the correct position by spacers. Lap all steel 480mm minimum, and hook all plain bars. At the junction with the edge beam, each rib steel bar shall sit on top of the edge beam bars and extend to the outermost bar. Allow for 75mm cover to the edge of the beam. Place 1 x H12 bar in each 100mm wide rib and 2 x H12 bars in each 300mm wide rib.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.15 PLACE REINFORCING STEEL: EDGE BEAM STEEL

Place the two edge beam reinforcing bars in the bottom of the edge beam and supported in the correct position by the spacers. Tie one edge beam bar below the mesh at the perimeter of the area covered by the polystyrene pods. Lap all steel 480mm minimum, and hook all plain bars. At corners, the inner bottom bars and the top bars cross each other and extend to 75mm from the outside face of the edge beam. Tie these bars together where they cross. Tying of edge beam steel is only required at corners.

3.16 PLACE REINFORCING STEEL: RE-ENTRANT CORNER STEEL

Place two D10 bars, 1200mm in length across the corner. Tie to the top of the mesh at re-entrant corners at 200mm centres with 50mm side cover from the internal corner.

Install specified steel to raft floor system manufacturer's requirements. Ensure specified minimum cover requirements are maintained.

3.17 PLACE REINFORCING MESH AND CHAIRS

Place reinforcing mesh over the pods and support on the mesh chairs spaced at 1200mm centres minimum, with two mesh chairs minimum placed per pod and with one mesh chair minimum per part pod.

3.18 MESH LAPS

Welded reinforcing mesh to be lapped and tied, such that the outermost wires overlap by the greater of:

- the spacing of the cross wires plus 50mm
- 150mm or
- manufacturer's requirements

Do not count bar extensions beyond the outermost cross wire.

3.19 FORM SLAB AND OPENING REBATES

Form rebates, as detailed on drawings.

Form a minimum 50mm rebate in slab for masonry veneer construction with a width dependent on the veneer width, cavity width and overhang. Waterproof the rebate with a bituminous sealer on both the vertical and horizontal faces.

3.20 STARTERS FOR MASONRY WALL CONSTRUCTION

Install wall starter bars in the correct position for the masonry block series being used to NZS 4229.

3.21 TOPPING SLAB DEPTH

85mm minimum plus additional cover as required for infloor heating.

3.22 PRE-PLACEMENT INSPECTION

Arrange for excavations, formwork and reinforcement to be inspected and passed by the Building Consent Authority.

3.23 EQUIPOTENTIAL BONDING REINFORCING

If it is a project requirement, ensure that reinforcing is electrically equipotential bonded (or at least conductor cable attached) before the concrete is poured. For bonded reinforcing ensure all reinforcing is interconnected with good contact at joints and tight conductive ties.

3.24 CONCRETE PLACEMENT AND COMPACTION

Ensure the rib and edge beam canals are clean, free of debris. Pour the floor in a single pour ensuring that the pods remain in position during placing. Pour concrete onto the top of each pod prior to filling the ribs around the pod to help prevent them from floating and lifting.

Compact concrete using a suitable poker vibrator for the ribs and ground beams and into all corners of the formwork. Screed as required. Confirm levels with a laser level.

3.25 CONCRETE FINISHING

Float and trowel to provide a U3 finish to NZS 3114: table 2, Classes of floor, exterior pavement and invert finishes.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.26 CONCRETE CURING

Curing of the concrete slab must take place immediately after finishing the concrete to NZS 3109 by one of the following curing methods:

- ponding or continuous sprinkling of water
- placing a wet covering or plastic membrane over the slab
- the use of liquid membrane curing compounds

3.27 SHRINKAGE CONTROL JOINTS

Cut shrinkage control joints as shown on the plans after hardening to a minimum depth of 25mm within 24 hours in summer or 48 hours in winter.

Where shrinkage control joints have not been shown on the plans, position the shrinkage control joints to coincide with major changes in the floor plan. Agree position of shrinkage control joints with the designer.

Bay dimensions formed by the shrinkage control joints to be limited to a maximum ratio of length to width of 2 to 1 with a maximum dimension of 6 metres. Place the shrinkage control joints over the 100mm wide internal ribs wherever possible. Where a shrinkage control joint runs along the line of a 300mm wide loadbearing rib, locate the cut directly above one edge of the 300mm rib. Do not place supplementary reinforcing bars (including re-entrant corner steel) across any shrinkage control joints.

3.28 CLEAN OUT SHRINKAGE CONTROL JOINTS

Clean out control joints. If required fill with suitable flexible sealant.

**Application - other concrete work**

3.29 PLACE CONCRETE

Do not place fresh concrete against the preceding layer after more than 45 minutes, or such lesser time as required by the circumstances, to NZS 3109: clause 7.4, Handling and placing.

3.30 SCREED THE SURFACE

Screed the concrete surface by straight edge or vibrating screed immediately after compaction and to tolerances in NZS 3109: table 5.2, Tolerances for in situ construction.

3.31 OTHER CONCRETE FINISHING

Screed and provide a U3 finish to NZS 3114: table 2, Classes of floor, exterior pavement and invert finishes.

**Finishing**

3.32 STRIKE FORMWORK

Strike formwork at least 12 hours after the slab has been finished without damaging or overloading structure.

3.33 SURFACE DEFECTS

Make good surface defects immediately after forms are stripped. Make good hollows or bony areas with suitable patching mortar, finished to the same tolerances as the parent concrete. Fill any tie rod holes with 1:2 mortar.

**Completion**

3.34 LEAVE

Leave work to the standard required by following procedures.

3.35 CLEAN UP

Clean up surrounding areas following completion of the concrete placement.

3.36 REMOVE

Remove debris, unused materials and elements from the site.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 3410 STRUCTURAL STEEL

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the fabrication, erection and specialist coating of structural steelwork of a general nature, for Construction Category CC1 or CC2 (to AS/NZS 5131).

Refer to SELECTIONS for project Construction Category.

### 1.1 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| AESS | Architecturally Exposed Structural Steelwork |
| CC | Construction Category |
| NDE | Non-Destructive Examination |

### 1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC F5/AS1 | Construction and demolition hazards |
| AS 1111.1 | ISO metric hexagon bolts and screws - Product grade C - Bolts |
| AS 1111.2 | ISO metric hexagon bolts and screws - Product grade C - Screws |
| AS 1112.1 | ISO metric hexagon nuts - Style 1 - Product grades A and B |
| AS/NZS 1163 | Cold-formed structural steel hollow sections |
| AS/NZS 1214 | Hot-dip galvanized coatings on threaded fasteners (ISO metric coarse thread series) |
| AS/NZS 1252.1 | High-strength steel fastener assemblies for structural engineering - Bolts, nuts and washers - Technical requirements |
| AS 1397 | Continuous hot-dip metallic coated steel sheet and strip - Coatings of zinc and zinc alloyed with aluminium and magnesium |
| AS/NZS 1554.1 | Structural steel welding - Welding of steel structures |
| AS 1554.2 | Structural steel welding - Stud welding (steel studs to steel) |
| AS/NZS 1554.3 | Structural steel welding - Welding of reinforcing steel |
| AS/NZS 1554.4 | Structural steel welding - Welding of high strength quenched and tempered steels |
| AS/NZS 1554.5 | Structural steel welding - Welding of steel structures subject to high levels of fatigue loading |
| AS/NZS 1594 | Hot-rolled steel flat products |
| AS 1627.4 | Metal finishing - Preparation and pretreatment of surfaces - Abrasive blast cleaning |
| AS 1627.9 | Metal finishing - Preparation and pretreatment of surfaces - Pictorial surface preparation standards for painting steel surfaces |
| AS/NZS 2312.2 | Guide to the protection of structural steel against atmospheric corrosion by the use of protective coatings - Part 2: Hot dip galvanizing |
| AS/NZS 2312.3 | Guide to the protection of structural steel against atmospheric corrosion by the use of protective coatings - Part 3: Thermal metal stray coatings |
| NZS 3404.1 | Steel Structures Standard |
| AS 3597 | Structural and pressure vessel steel - Quenched and tempered plate |
| AS/NZS 3678 | Structural steel - Hot-rolled plates, floorplates and slabs |
| AS/NZS 3679.1 | Structural steel - Hot-rolled bars and sections |
| AS/NZS 3679.2 | Structural steel - Welded I sections |
| AS/NZS 3750.9 | Paints for steel structures - Organic zinc-rich primer |
| AS/NZS 4680 | Hot-dip galvanized (zinc) coatings on fabricated ferrous articles |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| AS/NZS 5131 | Structural steelwork - Fabrication and erection |
| AS/NZS ISO 13918 | Welding - studs and ceramic ferules for arc stud welding |
| GANZ | Galvanizing Association of New Zealand - After-Fabrication Hot Dip Galvanizing. A practical reference for designers, specifiers, engineers, consultants, manufacturers and users |

**Requirements**

1.3 QUALIFICATIONS

Welding operators (and supervisors) to be experienced, competent workers, qualified to AS/NZS 5131, Table 7.4, to suit relevant Construction Category and weld category.

1.4 TOLERANCES

To AS/NZS 5131 Section 12 and Appendix F, Tolerance Class 1.

1.5 SHOP DRAWINGS

Generally to AS/NZS 5131, 4.4.

Refer to the general section 1235 SHOP DRAWINGS for the requirements for submission and review and the provision of final shop drawings.

Provide shop drawings to show, but not be limited to:

- Design calculations
- Fully dimensioned elevations of all elements (minimum scale 1:20)
- Complete details of construction, connections and all support systems (minimum scale 1:10)
- Jointing details and method of fixing between individual elements and between this installation and adjacent work
- Co-ordination requirements with other work
- A full schedule of materials and finishes.

Submit shop drawings for review to the architectural designer

- 10 working days (at least) before fabrication is planned to commence, provide shop drawings for review.
- Complete shop drawing review before commencing fabrication.

1.6 VERIFY DETAILS AND DIMENSIONS

Refer to drawings to ensure all required details and fixings are provided for in the structural steelwork. Verify dimensions against site measurements prior to fabrication.

1.7 TESTS

To AS/NZS 5131, Section 13, Inspection, Testing And Correction and AS/NZS 5131 Appendix I, Inspection of Welding and Bolting (New Zealand Only), as follows:

- Welds: Non-destructive examinations (NDE)

1.8 HOT WORK - FIRE SAFETY

Refer to section 1270 CONSTRUCTION

1.9 NOTE

This specification is to be read in conjunction with the Structural Engineer's specifications. Where there is conflict between this specification and the Structural Engineer's specification, the Structural Engineer's specification shall override this specification. If in doubt, both the Architect and the Engineer shall be contacted to resolve the issue.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STRUCTURAL STEEL

Comply with New Zealand, Australian, British or Japanese Standards for steel as required by NZS 3404.1, section 2, including, type, category, and suppression of brittle fracture. Also to AS/NZS 5131, Section 5.

Steel members and sections steel grade table

| Component | Conforming to | Grade |
|---|---|---|
| Hot rolled steel sections | AS/NZS 3679.1 | 300; 350; 300L0; 300S0; 350L0, 300L15; 350L15 |
| Plates and flats | AS/NZS 3678; AS/NZS 1594; | 250; 300; 350; 400; 450; WR350; 250L0, 300L0; 350L0; 300L15; 350L15 |
| Plates and flats | AS/NZS 1594; TS 102 | HA250; HA300; HA350; HA400; HW350 |
| Circular hollow sections | AS/NZS 1163; TS 102 | C250L0; C350L0; C450L0 |
| Square hollow sections | AS/NZS 1163; TS 102 | C350L0; C450L0 |
| Rectangular hollow sections | AS/NZS 1163; TS 102 | C350L0; C450L0 |
| Welded beams and columns | AS/NZS 3679.2; TS 102 | 300; 400 |
| Quench & tempered plate | AS 3597 | 500; 600; 700; 900; 1000 |
| Purlins and girts | AS 1397 | G250; G300; G350; G450; G500; G550, Z350, Z450 |

### 2.2 WELDING CONSUMABLES

To comply with and be selected for grade of steel being welded as required by AS/NZS 1554 series of standards.

### 2.3 FLUX

Welding flux to be dry and from sealed containers.

### 2.4 BOLTS, NUTS AND WASHERS

Grade 4.6, screws AS 1111.2 and bolts to AS 1111.1. Grade 4.6 nuts to comply with AS 1112.1. Property Class 8.8 bolts and equivalent nuts and washers (high strength structural quality only) to comply with AS/NZS 1252.1. Hot-dip galvanize to AS/NZS 4680 (and AS/NZS 1214), bolts, nuts and washers forming a permanent part of a structure subject to a protective coating.

Bolt Categories and tensioning

| Bolting category | Bolt standard | Property Class | Tension method | Tensioned joint type |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4.6/S | AS 1111.1 | 4.6 | Snug tight | |
| 8.8/S | AS/NZS 1252.1 | 8.8 | Snug tight | |
| 8.8/TB | AS/NZS 1252.1 | 8.8 | Full tension | Bearing |
| 8.8/TF | AS/NZS 1252.1 | 8.8 | Full tension | Friction |

In bearing type connections where the thread position relative to the shear plane is to be controlled.
N - threads included in shear plane
X - threads excluded from shear plane
F - friction type joints - prepare faying surfaces

### 2.5 GROUT

To AS/NZS 5131, 5.8.

### 2.6 CORROSION PROTECTION - HOT DIP GALVANIZED


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Hot dip galvanizing to AS/NZS 2312.2.

2.7 CORRISION PROTECTION - THERMAL METAL SPRAY

Themal metal spray coatings to AS/NZS 2312.3.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Preparation, assembly and Fabrication

3.1 GENERALLY

To AS/NZS 5131, Section 6.

3.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.3 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements. Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.4 SURFACE FINISH

Grind off all burrs and sharp arrises.

3.5 CUTTING

To AS/NZS 5131, Section 6.5.

3.6 HOLING

To AS/NZS 5131, Section 6.7

Do not use slotted holes for connections, other than those documented.

3.7 TEMPORARY MEMBERS FOR GALVANIZED ELEMENTS

Provide temporary members, as required, to strengthen prefabricated elements likely to be distorted by the subsequent hot dip galvanizing process. Co-ordinate, with the galvanizer, the details of any temporary members required.

### Welding

3.8 WELDING GENERALLY

To AS/NZS 5131, Section 7 and AS/NZS 1554.1. Equipment to comply with AS/NZS 1554.1, clause 1.8.2.

Site weld only when correct alignment and preset or camber have been achieved.
Weld types as documented elsewhere or on drawings
Weld categories not documented elsewhere or on drawings to be Category GP.

3.9 NON-DESTRUCTIVE WELD EXAMINATION

Non-destructive weld examination (NDE) to AS/NZS 5131, clause 13.6.2 and AS/NZS 5131 Appendix I, Inspection of Welding and Bolting (New Zealand Only).

If non-visual NDE is required, use a third party testing authority.
Repair any welds revealed as faulty by NDE and repeat the examination.

3.10 WELDING GALVANIZED STEEL

When welding already Galvanized steel either:

- remove coating locally and carry out a standard weld
- leave coating and adjust welding technique to those recommended in GANZ After-Fabrication Hot Dip Galvanizing document. (Among other things, this will generally mean a slower welding speed.)

Final weld shall meet all the standards and requirements of a standard weld.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.11 WELDING THERMAL METAL SPRAYED STEEL

Where possible, welding to be carried out prior to thermal metal spraying. Where welding to be carried out after thermal spraying, the weld zone to be masked and not coated with thermal metal spray for approximately 100mm from the weld zone to AS/NZS 2312.3. Carry out standard weld, then subsequent thermal spraying and coating processes.

**Mechanical fastening**

3.12 MECHANICAL FASTENING GENERALLY

To AS/NZS 5131.

Connection contact surfaces to AS/NZS5131, 8.4.1.
Category 8.8/TF bolting to be clean, as rolled and free from applied finishes.
For washers, place one washer under the part rotated during tightening process (nut or bolt head).
Permanent bolt only when correct alignment and preset or camber have been achieved.

3.13 TENSIONING BOLTS

For tensioning of bolting categories 8.8/TB and 8.8/TF, use part-turn method or a direct tension indicator device. Ensure clear thread run out beneath the nut after tensioning is to New Zealand requirement of AS/NZS 5131, 8.2.2.

3.14 THREADS EXCLUDED FROM SHEAR PLANE

Select length of bolts such that the threaded portion does not occur within the shear plane between joined parts.

**Erection of structural steel**

3.15 ERECTION GENERALLY

To AS/NZS 5131, Section 11.

Make sure every part of the structure has sufficient design capacity and is stable under construction loads produced by the construction procedure.
Comply with NZBC F5/AS1: Construction and demolition hazards, and the WorkSafe publication: Guidelines for the provision of facilities and general safety in the construction industry.

3.16 BOLTS AND ANCHORAGES

For each group of anchor bolts, provide a template with set-out lines clearly marked for positioning the bolts when casting in.

Start erection only when the holding down bolts and anchorages have been cast-in-place long enough to achieve sufficient strength.

3.17 TEMPORARY WORK

Provide temporary bracing, propping and restraint as required to make structure safe. Fix any temporary members so as not to weaken or deface permanent steelwork. Leave temporary bracing and restraint in place until the erection is sufficiently advanced to allow safe removal of temporary bracing.

3.18 SITE WORK

Other than work shown on the shop detail documentation as site work, do not fabricate, modify or weld structural steel on-site.

3.19 GROUTING SUPPORTS

Before grouting steelwork supported by concrete or masonry, set steelwork on packing or wedges as follows:

- Permanent packing or wedges - Form with solid steel or grout of similar strength to the permanent grout.
- Temporary packing or wedges - Remove before completion of grouting.

Grout at supports before constructing supported floors, walls and roofing.
Do not grout if the base plate or the footing surface temperature are outside the range 3°C to 35°C or to manufacturer's requirements.
Fill the space beneath the base plate with grout, if necessary hammered in tight to ensure complete filling of space.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.20 DRIFTING

Use drifting only to bring members into position, without enlarging holes or distorting components.

3.21 EARTHING STRUCTURAL STEEL

If it is a project electrical requirement, ensure that any electrically at-risk, steel frames or isolated members, are earthed (or at least conductor cable attached) before the steel has any in-situ finishes applied or is enclosed.

**Finishing - galvanizing**

3.22 GALVANIZING

Refer to the separate section 6781 HOT DIP GALVANIZING for galvanizing requirements.

3.23 STEELWORK BEING GALVANIZED

Fabricator to provide any temporary members required by the galvanizer to strengthen prefabricated elements likely to be distorted by the subsequent hot dip galvanizing process.

Abrasive blast clean to AS 1627.4, class 2.5.
To galvanize, clean sections thoroughly and apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to the requirements of AS/NZS 4680. Zinc coating thickness not less than AS/NZS 4680, Table 1 and Table 2

3.24 REPAIR WELD DAMAGED GALVANIZING

Remove welding slag, power tool clean, grind off all burrs and sharp arrises, all repairs to AS/NZS 4680, 8.4 **Site repair**:

- Small repairs:- Colour matched zinc rich paint.
- Large repairs:- With approval, colour matched zinc rich paint or other agreed option.

**Finishing - thermal metal spray**

3.25 THERMAL METAL SPRAY

Refer to the separate section 6782 METAL SPRAY CORROSION PROTECTION for metal spray requirements.

3.26 STEELWORK BEING THERMAL METAL SPRAYED

To AS/NZS 2312.3.

- Mask areas not to be coated prior to blasting and spraying.
- Abrasive blast clean steel surfaces to be sprayed with zinc or zinc alloy thermal metal spray to AS 1627.4 class 2½, to produce a sharp angular profile 65-100µm.
- Abrasive blast clean steel surfaces to be sprayed with aluminium or aluminium alloy thermal metal spray to AS 1627.4 class 3, to produce a sharp angular profile 75-100µm.
- Apply spray coating to dry surfaces, before discoloration and within 8 hours of surface preparation.
- Brush or vacuum surface so completely free of loose particles and dust.
- For application, steel temperature to be 3°C minimum above dew point and when air temperature is below 5°C.
- Apply thermal spray coating uniformly over the entire surface. Apply coating in multiple overlapping layers.
- Where sealing is specified, sealer to be applied as soon as possible after metal spraying.
- Where sanding is required to denib or reduce surface roughness, this to be carried out after the application of a sealer coat.

Finished dry film thickness to AS/NZS 2312.3, Table 2 Recommended values for the nominal thickness of the metallic coatings in microns - Life to first maintenance >25 years, for the specified corrosivity category.

3.27 REPAIR WELD DAMAGED THERMAL SPRAY

All repairs to AS/NZS 2312.3, section 9, Repair of thermal sprayed coatings.

- Damage to zinc or zinc alloy thermal metal spray up to 10cm² but less than 10mm wide, repair by mechanical cleaning to equivalent of Sa 2½ to AS 1627.4 and apply zinc rich paint conforming to AS/NZS 3750.9
- Damage to zinc areas greater than 10cm² and any damage to aluminium thermal metal spray


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

should be re-prepared forming a feathered edge onto sound metal by spot blasting to original cleanliness & blast profile, then finish with metal thermal spray to match original.

**Finishing - preparation**

3.28 ENCASED STEELWORK

Clean the steelwork to be encased in concrete to remove all loose mill scale, rust, dirt and other matter affecting bond with concrete. Achieve this by wire brushing and the use of suitable solvents.

3.29 POWER TOOL CLEANING

To AS/NZS 5131, Section 9.

Remove oil and grease by the use of solvents. Scrape, wire brush and power tool clean to a minimum Class 2 finish to AS 1627.9. Clean to bright metal, but avoid producing a polished surface. Check that no burrs or sharp arrises remain which may prevent the full coating thickness being attained.

3.30 ABRASIVE BLASTING

To AS/NZS 5131, Section 9.

Remove oil and grease by the use of solvents. Abrasive blast clean to a Class 2.5 finish to AS 1627.4. Clean to bright metal, but avoid producing a polished surface. Select grit type and equipment such that the cleaned surface profile between peaks and valleys does not exceed one third of the dry film thickness. Check that no burrs or sharp arrises remain which may prevent the full coating thickness being attained.

**Finishing - paint and protective coatings**

3.31 PROTECTIVE COATINGS

Refer to the separate section 6745 PROTECTIVE COATINGS - STEELWORK for protective coating requirements .

3.32 PAINTING

Refer to the appropriate separate painting section(s) for painting requirements.

3.33 UNPAINTED SURFACES

Do not paint:

- faying face of high strength friction grip bolted joints
- areas for site welding, keeping 75mm clear all round
- surfaces being embedded in concrete.

Where steel is only partly encased then extend priming 50mm minimum into the concrete encasement area.

3.34 PRIMING GENERALLY

Coat steelwork, unless specifically noted otherwise, with the specified priming paint, including patch priming on site after erection.

3.35 PATCH PRIMING

Clean areas of damaged priming and areas left clear for site jointing to a standard comparable with that specified for shop cleaning. Wash off chemical deposits from welding fumes. Apply priming coats to the same standard as shop primers, ensuring thorough coating of bolts, nuts and connection areas. Reprime if more than 4 weeks elapse before the final coating system is applied.

3.36 COATING SYSTEMS

Apply all coatings in accordance with the coating manufacturer's requirements. Apply coatings to steel within 4 hours of cleaning and before condensation or light rusting can occur. Ensure steel is dry and atmospheric conditions warm and dry, with an air temperature of greater than 12°C and relative humidity less than 85%.

3.37 TOUCH-UP

Touch up primer. Apply protective coatings as specified.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Finishing - fire rated coatings

3.38 FIRE RATED COATINGS - SEPARATE SECTION

Refer to the separate section 6742 FIRE RATED COATINGS - STEELWORK for fire rated coating requirements.

3.39 FIRE RATED COATINGS - MANUFACTURER'S REQUIREMENTS

Refer to the separate manufacturer's information for rated coating requirements.

3.40 TEMPORARY CONNECTIONS

Remove temporary elements on completion and restore the surface.

### Completion & Commissioning

3.41 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 3820 CARPENTRY

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and erection of timber framing, as a framed structure, or as partitioning. It includes prefabricated timber and engineered wood.

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 2310 FOUNDATIONS for piles and subfloor framing.

Refer to 2362 FOUNDATION WALLS for foundations walls to NZS 3604.
Refer to 3101 CONCRETE WORK - BASIC for floor slabs.
Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC for underlays, foils and DPC.
Refer to 4230 WALL CLADDING and windows and doors section/s for exterior trim.
Refer to 5120 LININGS and windows and doors section/s for interior trim.

### 1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| FSC | Forest Stewardship Council |
| PEFC | Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification |

### 1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC B2/AS1 | Durability provisions for building elements |
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| AS/NZS 1328.1 | Glued laminated structural timber - Performance requirements and minimum production requirements |
| AS/NZS 1604.1 | Preservative-treated wood-based products - Part 1: Products and treatment |
| NZS 3602 | Timber and wood-based products for use in building |
| NZS 3603 | Timber structures standard |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 3622 | Verification of timber properties |
| NZS 3640 | Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber |
| AS/NZS 4357.0 | Structural laminated veneer lumber - Specification |
| FTMA CoP | Frame and Truss Manufacturers Association Code of Practice |

***A copy of** NZS 3604 **Timber-framed buildings, must be held on site.**

### 1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Workers to be experienced, competent trades people familiar with the materials and techniques specified.

### 1.5 DIMENSIONS

All timber sizes except for battens are actual minimum dried sizes.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TIMBER FRAMING, TREATED

Species, grade and in service moisture content to NZS 3602, NZBC B2/AS1 and treatment to NZS 3640, NZBC B2/AS1. Structural grade (SG) to NZS 3604, NZS 3622 with properties to NZS 3603.

### 2.2 LAMINATED TIMBER

Radiata pine laminations to AS/NZS 1328.1; treated as required by NZS 3602, NZBC B2/AS1, to the requirements of NZBC B2/AS1, AS/NZS 1604.1, NZS 3640, with special attention to Appendix B "Specification advisory notes". Supply weather resistant sealed.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.3 TIMBER TRUSSES

To FTMA CoP. Moisture content 16% at supply.

2.4 WALL DWANGS, NOGS AND BLOCKING

If dwangs, nogs or blocking is required for exterior insulated walls, ensure they are not full depth of framing. Install flush with face of wall required, leaving a minimum 20mm or 45mm preferable gap to the other face to NZS 3604, 8.8. Dwangs and nogs if required to be at 1350mm centres maximum to NZS 3604, 8.8.

2.5 EXTERIOR CAVITY WALL BATTENS - TIMBER - NON-STRUCTURAL

H3.1 or H3.2 Radiata pine battens, minimum 20mm thickness, width and height to match timber framing studs. Temporary fix battens before being fixed into the framing with the cladding fixings. To NZS 3602, table 1, reference 1D.10, Requirements for wood-based building components to achieve a 50-year durability performance.

2.6 EXTERIOR CAVITY WALL BATTENS - PROPRIETARY - NON-STRUCTURAL

Extruded polypropylene battens, size approximately 45mm wide x 18mm thickness. Temporary fix battens before being fixed into the framing with the cladding fixings. To the scope limitations of NZBC E2/AS1, and NZS 3604 Building Wind Zones up to, and including "Extra High".

**Components**

2.7 NAILS

Type to NZS 3604, section 4, **Durability**, and of the size and number for each particular types of joint as laid down in the nailing schedules of NZS 3604, sections 6-10.

2.8 SCREWS

Wood screws to the requirements of NZS 3604, 2.4 Fastenings and Fabrication, and section 4, **Durability**, and of the type, number and form required for each screw application to NZS 3604, sections 6 - 10.

2.9 BOLTS AND COACH SCREWS

Bolts and coach screws complete with washers, to the requirements of NZS 3604, clause 2.4.5 Bolts and Coach Screws, and section 4, **Durability**, and of the type, number and form required for each particular junction to NZS 3604, sections 6 - 10.

2.10 NAIL PLATES

Comply with the requirements of NZS 3604, section 4, **Durability**, and of the number and form required for each particular junction to NZS 3604, sections 6 - 10. Plates to the plate manufacturer's design for the particular locations as shown on the drawings.

2.11 CONNECTORS

Comply with the requirements of NZS 3604, section 4, **Durability**, and of the number and form required for each particular junction to NZS 3604, sections 6-10. Connectors and structural brackets to the connector manufacturer's design for particular locations shown on drawings.

2.12 CORROSION RISKS

For interior timber, treated with copper-based timber preservatives (H3.2 or higher), use a minimum of hot-dipped galvanized steel fixings and fasteners.

For exterior timber, timber in damp areas and timber subject to occasional wetting, use only stainless steel (or equivalent) fixings and connectors, when the timber is treated with; Copper Azole (CuAz, Preservative code 58), Alkaline Copper Quaternary (ACQ, Preservative code 90), Micronise Copper Azole (code 88) or Micronised Copper Quaternary (code 89).

2.13 DPC

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC section


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXECUTION GENERALLY

To NZS 3604 except as varied in this specification. Execution to include those methods, practices and processes contained in the unit standards for the National Certificate in Carpentry and the National Certificate in Joinery (cabinetry, exterior joinery, stairs).

3.2 SEPARATION

Separate all timber framing timbers from concrete, masonry and brick by: -

- a full length bituminous damp-proof membrane overlapping timber by at least 6mm; or
- a 12mm minimum free draining air space

3.3 ATTENDANCE

Provide and fix blocks, nogs, openings and other items as required by other trades.

3.4 MOISTURE CONTENT

Maximum allowable equilibrium moisture content (EMC) for non air-conditioned or centrally heated buildings for framing to which linings are attached.

| | |
|---|---|
| Framing at erection: | 24% maximum |
| Framing at enclosure: | 20% maximum |
| Framing at lining: | 16% maximum |

3.5 SET-OUT

Set out framing in accordance with the requirements of NZS 3604 and as required to support sheet linings and claddings. When necessary provide framing to suit any required cladding/lining control joints and sheet joints.

3.6 FRAMING FLOORS

Framed and fastened to NZS 3604, section 7, **Floors**.

3.7 FRAMING WALLS

Frame to required loading and bracing complete with lintels, sills and nogs, all fabricated and fastened to NZS 3604, section 8, **Walls**.

3.8 FRAMING ROOFS

Frame to required loading and bracing complete with valley boards, ridge boards and purlins. Design and fit roof trusses complete with anchorage. All fabricated and fastened to NZS 3604, section 9, **Posts** and 10, **Roof framing**.

3.9 FRAMING CEILINGS

Frame to required loading and bracing complete with runners and battens set out to support ceiling lining. All fabricated and fastened to NZS 3604, section 13, **Ceilings**. Trim for openings in ceilings and hatches to NZS 3604 section 13.3, **Openings in ceilings**. Provide blocking for water tanks located in the ceiling space to NZS 3604, section 13.4, **Water tanks in roof space**.

3.10 INSTALLING WALL UNDERLAYS

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC section

3.11 FIT CAVITY BATTENS

Fit and fix 20mm cavity battens over wall underlay or rigid air barrier, fully nail to timber studs to the requirements of the manufacturer or to NZS 3604. Fit and fix related flashings. Make allowance for cladding control joints where required. Fit and fix cavity closers to base of walls, open horizontal (or raking) junctions and over openings (windows, meters etc.).

3.12 DPC TO LOSP TREATED TIMBER

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC section.

3.13 DPC TO TIMBER

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC section.

## 4 SELECTIONS

4.1 FLOOR FRAMING - RADIATA PINE

| Member | Species | Grade | Treatment |
|---|---|---|---|


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mid floor joists: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Boundary joists: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |

4.2 EXTERIOR WALL FRAMING - RADIATA PINE

| Member | Species | Grade | Treatment |
|---|---|---|---|
| Exterior walls: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Parapets: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Enclosed decks and balconies: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Cantilevered joists enclosed decks and balconies: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H3.2 |
| Nogs | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Wall battens (not cavity): | Radiata pine | Merch | H1.2 |
| Jamb battens: | Radiata Pine | Merch | H3.1 |

4.3 ROOF FRAMING - RADIATA PINE

| Member | Species | Grade | Treatment |
|---|---|---|---|
| Rafters: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Trusses: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Purlins: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Ceiling joists and battens: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Valley boards: | Radiata pine | Merchantable | H1.2 |
| Sarking: | Radiata pine | Merchantable | H1.2 |
| Skillion roof framing: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Enclosed flat roof framing: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |

4.4 INTERIOR FRAMING - RADIATA PINE

| Member | Species | Grade | Treatment |
|---|---|---|---|
| Non structural walls: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |
| Structural and braced walls: | Radiata pine | SG8 | H1.2 |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4131A ARDEX DAMP-PROOF MEMBRANES

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the application of the following ARDEX New Zealand Ltd Shelterseal self-adhesive bituminous damp-proof membranes.
It includes:

- ARDEX WPM 3000X Shelterseal Waterproofing Membrane

1.1 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| HDPE | High-density polyethylene |
| PP | Polypropylene |
| SBS | Styrene-butadiene-styrene rubber |

### Documents

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS.

1.3 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer and supplier documents relating to this part of the work:

ARDEX WPM 3000X Technical Data Sheet
ARDEX WPM 3000X Safety Data Sheet
ARDEX WPM 3000X System CAD Drawings
ARDEX Shelterseal Systems BPIS
ARDEX Damp Proofing Membranes Quality Control Sheet
BRANZ Appraisal 462 (2026) - Shelterseal Damp-Proof Membranes - Amended 12 March 2026

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | ARDEX New Zealand Limited |
| Web: | www.ardex.co.nz |
| Email: | info@ardexnz.com |
| Telephone: | 0800 2 ARDEX (27339) |

### Warranties

1.4 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 20 years | For ARDEX WPM 3000X & 5000HD Shelterseal Waterproofing Membrane systems |

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer/supplier standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

1.5 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 10 years | For application |

- Provide this warranty on the installer/applicator standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS - MANUFACTURER / SUPPLIER REQUIREMENTS

Waterproofing applicators to be approved by ARDEX New Zealand. Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.7 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

1.8 QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER REQUIREMENTS

Installer/applicator to maintain quality control system to manufacturer/supplier requirements, including but not limited to:

- Damp Proofing Membranes Quality Control Sheet

Complete and submit to ARDEX New Zealand Limited. Make available quality control records if requested by the contract administrator or consenting authority.

### Compliance information

1.9 COMPLIANCE - BRANZ APPRAISAL

ARDEX Shelterseal Waterproofing Membranes have been appraised as meeting provisions of the NZBC when used as damp-proof membranes within the Conditions and Limitations of its BRANZ Appraisal 462.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 ARDEX WPM 3000X WATERPROOFING MEMBRANE

1.5mm thick self adhesive SBS bituminous waterproofing membrane with cross laminated HDPE protective film. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.2 ARDEX WPM 240 PRIMER

Single component, solvent based bituminous primer. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.3 ARDEX WPM 247 PRIMER

Single component, water based bitumen modified primer. Refer to SELECTIONS.

### Components

2.4 ARDEX DRS 10 GC PROTECTION MEMBRANE

Prefabricated 10mm thick cuspated HDPE sheet with geotextile backing layer.

2.5 ARDEX WATERSTOP WPM 1955

20mm wide x 10mm thick hydrophilic rubber joint comprised of butyl rubber and polyethylene aggregated by high cohesion polymeric binders.

2.6 ARDEX PRESSURE BAR

38mm wide aluminium pressure bar.

### Accessories

2.7 ARDEX CA 20 P ADHESIVE

Single component, silane modified polymer neutral curing sealant which hardens in reaction with moisture.

2.8 ARDEX BITUMINOUS SEALANT

Single component bituminous mastic sealant.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.9 ARDEX A46 MORTAR
Rapid setting and drying, slump free cement-based mortar.

2.10 NAILS
Zinc plated concrete nails, length to suit application.

2.11 CANVAS TAPE
Reinforced canvas tape.

2.12 ARDEX RA 030 JOINT SEALANT
Single component elastomeric joint sealant.

2.13 BACKING ROD
Polyethylene foam (PEF) backing rod.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products. Store membranes in an area protected from UV exposure.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS
Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS
Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Concrete substrate: 75% maximum relative humidity, minimum 28 days cured

### Installation/application

3.4 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES
Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.5 INSTALLATION GENERALLY
Install in accordance with ARDEX installation instructions. Surfaces to be clean, dry, smooth and free of loose materials, dust, oil, grease, curing compounds or release agents.

3.6 COORDINATION
Coordinate the installation of cast-in ARDEX WPM 1955 water stops prior pouring concrete.

3.7 INSTALL ARDEX WATERSTOP WPM 1955
Position water stops between reinforcing bars or in support with a minimum 8cm raised edge. Fix to support with nails or ARDEX CA 20 P adhesive ready for concrete casting. At water stop joints, extend the rubber strips side-by-side minimum 50mm; avoid overlapping.

3.8 SURFACE PREPARATION
Grind or wire brush surfaces to remove sharp edges and projections. Surfaces to be clean, dry, smooth and free of loose materials, dust, oil, grease, curing compounds or release agents. Grind external corners to a smooth 10mm chamfer. Fill internal corners with a 25mm fillet of mortar.

3.9 APPLY PRIMER
Roll, brush or spray primer onto concrete substrate. Leave to dry before applying membrane.

3.10 CONTROL JOINTS
Install backing rod into control joint, apply a continuous bead of ARDEX RA 030 joint sealant over. Apply a 200mm wide strip of tanking membrane centred over control joint.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.11 REINFORCE CORNERS AND JOINTS

Apply a 300mm wide strip of waterproofing membrane underflashing centrally located over internal and exterior corners, and over construction joints in the substrate.

3.12 INSTALL WATERPROOFING MEMBRANE

Install first layer of membrane over primed substrate from the lowest point. Lap subsequent layers over the previous layer 60mm with end laps 100mm. Press membrane to adhere to substrate. Press overlaps to adhere joints.

3.13 ADDITIONAL LAYER

Where a double layer of membrane is specified, install additional layers with laps staggered.

3.14 PENETRATIONS

Apply a 300mm wide strip of waterproofing membrane formed around penetrations extending 150mm along penetration. Apply a second layer overlapping first layer 100mm.

3.15 TERMINATION OF MEMBRANE

Finish top edge of membrane minimum 150mm above finished ground level. Fix ARDEX Pressure Bar over sealant bead at 200mm centres. Apply a continuous bead of ARDEX Bituminous Sealant over terminated membrane along pressure bar.

**Application - protection membrane**

3.16 INSTALL ARDEX DRS 10 GC PROTECTION MEMBRANE

Install protective membrane over tanking membrane with geotextile fabric facing outward. Overlap edges minimum 200mm with cuspated dimples interlocked. Spot fix tautly over tanking membrane with daubs of ARDEX Bituminous Sealant. Secure joints with canvas tape over geotextile fabric face.

**Completion & Commissioning**

3.17 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.

## 4 SELECTIONS

For further details on selections go to www.ardex.co.nz
Substitutions are not permitted to the following, unless stated otherwise.

4.1 PRESSURE RATING

Designated water pressure head: TBC By Others.

4.2 ARDEX WPM 3000X SHELTERSEAL DAMP-PROOFING

| | |
|---|---|
| Location: | External Structure |
| System: | ARDEX WPM 3000X Self Adhesive SBS Membrane |
| Layers: | One |
| Substrate (vertical): | Concrete |
| Substrate (vertical): | Concrete masonry |
| Substrate (horizontal): | Site concrete |
| Primer: | ARDEX WPM 247 |

4.3 PRESSURE BAR

| | |
|---|---|
| Location: | External structure |
| Brand/type: | ARDEX aluminium pressure bar |
| Size: | 38mm x 2.4m long |
| Sealant: | ARDEX Bituminous Sealant |

4.4 ARDEX PROTECTION MEMBRANE

| | |
|---|---|
| Manufacturer: | ARDEX |
| Brand: | ARDEX DRS 10 GC prefabricated drainage protection membrane |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

4.5 SEALANT

Location: External Structure
Product: ARDEX bituminous sealant

4.6 WATER STOP

Location: External Structure
Brand/type: ARDEX WPM 1955



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4161MP MASONS UNDERLAYS, DPM & DPC

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the application of Masons NZ Limited products. It includes:

- DPM & DPC
- Roof underlays
- Wall underlays
- Installation accessories

### 1.1 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| COP | NZ Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice |
| DPC | Damp-proof course |
| DPM | Damp-proof membrane |
| EPDM | Ethylene propylene diene monomer |
| FAB | Flexible Air Barrier |
| GSM | Grams per Square Metre |
| LOSP | Light Organic Solvent Preservative |
| LRV | Light reflectance value |
| MRM | NZ Metal Roofing Manufacturers Association Inc. |
| NASH | National Association of Steel Framed Housing Inc. |
| PEF | Polyethylene foam |
| PET | Polyethylene Terephthalate |
| VHP | Very High Permeability |

The following definitions apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| Wall underlay | As defined in NZBC E2/AS1 and in NZBC E2/AS4 - NASH Building Envelope Solutions - A building paper, synthetic material or rigid sheathing used as part of the wall cladding system to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which occasionally penetrates the wall cladding is directed back to the exterior of the building. |
| Roof underlay | As defined in NZS 2295 - An absorbent permeable building underlay, used as part of the building's water management system in the roof cladding system, that absorbs or collects condensation or water that may penetrate the roof cladding. |

**Documents**

### 1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC B2/AS1 | Durability provisions for building elements |
| NZBC C/AS2 | Protection from fire for buildings other than risk group SH |
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| NZBC E2/AS4 | External moisture - Light steel framing weathertight solution for buildings up to 3 storeys or of 10m or less in height with a floor area not exceeding 300m² |
| NZS/AS 1530.2 | Methods of fire tests on building materials - Components and structures - Test for flammability of materials |
| NZS 2295 | Pliable, permeable building underlays |
| AS/NZS 2904 | Damp-proof courses and flashings |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| AS/NZS 4201.4 | Pliable building membranes and underlays - Methods of test - Resistance to water penetration |
| AS/NZS 4389 | Roof safety mesh |
| AAMA 711-13 | Voluntary Specification for Self-Adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products |
| MRM CoP | NZ Metal roof and wall cladding code of practice |
| NASH Building Envelope Solutions | 2019 Light Steel Framed Buildings |
| NASH Standard Part 2 | May 2019 Light Steel Framed Buildings |

1.3 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's documents related to this part of the work:

Masons Hydro™ Seal Bituminous Masonry Sealer
- Product brochure and specification
- Material safety data sheet

Masons Dry Fix™ Damp-Proof Course
- Product brochure and specification

Masons Roof Underlays - VHP® Maxi, VHP® Ultra, VHP® Strong, VHP® Value:
- CodeMark CMNZ70098 Version 4 - Masons Roof Underlays - VHP® Value, VHP® Strong, VHP® Ultra, VHP® Maxi
- Product brochure
- Installation instructions V3.0 Feb 2024
- Material data safety sheet

Masons White-Faced Foil:
- CodeMark CMNZ70172 ver0 - White-faced Foil Composite Underlay
- Masons White-Faced Foil, Design and Installation Guide V1.2 October 2024

Masons Barricade™ FR Fire Retardant Building Wrap:
- CodeMark CMNZ70072 Version 4 - Masons Barricade FR
- Product brochure
- Installation instructions May 2019
- Material safety data sheet

Masons Barricade WD Self-Adhesive Weather Resistive Barrier:
- CodeMark CMNZ70142 Version 1 - Masons Barricade WD Self-Adhesive Weather-Resistive Barrier
- Product brochure
- Installation guide V1.0 August 2022 and Visual Installation Guide
- Technical data sheet

Masons UNI® Flexible Air Barrier:
- CodeMark CMNZ70116 Version 2 - Masons UNI® and UNI® PLUS Flexible Air Barriers
- Product brochure and specification
- Design and installation guide V1.0 Oct 2021
- Technical data sheet and UV exposure report
- Material Safety data sheet and on-site checklist
- Alternative Solution documents: Product Assurance Supplier Statement (PASS™ No. 19154) and Standards Comparison Report

Masons UNI® PLUS Flexible Air Barrier:
- CodeMark CMNZ70116 Version 2 - Masons UNI® and UNI® PLUS Flexible Air Barriers
- Product brochure
- Design and installation guide V2.0 Mar 2022
- Material Safety data sheet
- Alternative Solution documents: Product Assurance Supplier Statement (PASS™ No. 19192) and Standards Comparison Report

Masons UNI® PRO Flexible Air Barrier:
- CodeMark CMNZ70117 Version 1 - Masons UNI® PRO Flexible Air Barrier
- Product brochure
- Design and installation guide V1.0 Nov 2021
- Material safety data sheet


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Masons Insul-Baffle, Design and Installation Guide V1.0 August 2024
Masons Insul-Baffle, Data Sheet V1.0 November 2024
Masons 40 Below™ Flashing Tapes:
- CodeMark CMNZ70075 Version 3 - Masons Flashing Tapes
- Product brochure and specification
- Installation instructions

Masons Hydro™ Flashing Tape & Corner Guards:
- CodeMark CMNZ70075 Version 3 - Masons Flashing Tapes
- Product brochure and specification
- Installation instructions

Masons UNI® FAB Seam & Repair Tape:
- Product brochure

Masons PEF Backing Rod:
- Product brochure and specification

Masons Penetration Seals:
- Product brochure & durability appraisal

Masons WrapStrap™ House Wrap Strapping:
- Product brochure & specification

Masons Insulation Strap
- Product brochure

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | Masons NZ Limited |
| Web: | www.mpb.co.nz |
| Email: | specify@mpb.co.nz |
| Telephone: | 0800 522 533 |

**Warranties**

1.4 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 15 years | For Masons Uni Plus Building Wrap |
| 15 years | For Masons VHP Strong Roofing Underlay |

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer/supplier standard form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of purchase or dispatch from Masons NZ Ltd whichever is earlier.
- Provide the completed On-Site check sheets, where applicable.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

**Requirements**

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS - GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.6 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

1.7 CODEMARK CERTIFICATE

Refer to MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS for individual CodeMark certificate numbers.

Masons wall and roof underlays, and flashing tapes meet the requirements of the NZBC when used within the Conditions and Limitations of their Certificates of Conformity.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Masons DPM & DPC

2.1 MASONS HYDRO™ SEAL DAMP-PROOF MEMBRANE

A black, bituminous waterproof membrane. Thixotropic liquid for a paint-on application. To NZBC B2/AS1, NZBC E2/AS1, Table C.2.1.1: Properties of roof underlays and wall underlays, and NZBC E2/AS4 Table 23.

2.2 MASONS DRY FIX™ DAMP-PROOF COURSE

Black, embossed, flexible, impervious polyethylene film. Manufactured to AS/NZS 2904, Meets the requirements of NZBC E2/AS1, Table C.2.1.1: Properties of roof underlays and wall underlays, and NZBC E2/AS4 10.3 and Table 23 as a DPC.

### Masons Roof Underlays

2.3 MASONS ROOF UNDERLAY - VHP® STRONG

140 gsm, breathable, self supporting, fire retardant, synthetic roof underlay, comprising two white, embossed outer layers of nonwoven polyethylene fabric with a water-resistant, vapour-permeable central membrane. The outer face is marked "VHP® Strong". CodeMark certified and tested to NZS/AS 1530.2 for flammability index ≤ 5, to meet NZBC C/AS2.

### Masons Wall Underlays

2.4 MASONS UNI® PLUS FLEXIBLE AIR BARRIER

Fire retardant, absorbent, water-resistant, 180 GSM, synthetic wall underlay, comprising two outer layers of nonwoven polypropylene with a middle layer of a functional-technical film. CodeMark certified. The outer face is blue and marked “UNI® PLUS Flexible Air Barrier” the underside is white.

### Masons Flexible Air Barriers - Fastening Systems

2.5 MASONS UNI® FASTENERS FOR TIMBER FRAME

25mm galvanized or stainless steel ring shank nail fasteners with 32mm diameter plastic domed washer for use with a hammer, or with 25mm diameter plastic washer collated for use with the UNI (stinger) nailgun.

### Masons Flashing Tapes & Corner Guards

2.6 MASONS 40 BELOW™ PLATINUM FLASHING

Self-adhesive flexible polyacrylic flashing tape with silver foil facing. Tape thickness 0.3mm, available in roll width 75mm - 230mm. 180days UV resistance. CodeMark certified, nail and screw sealability to AAMA 711-13.

2.7 MASONS 40 BELOW™ FLEX FLASHING TAPE

Self-adhesive flexible acrylic flashing tape with white facing. Tape thickness 0.3mm, available in roll width 75mm - 230mm. 270days UV resistance. CodeMark certified, single layer nail and screw sealability to AAMA 711-13.

2.8 MASONS HYDRO™ CORNER GUARDS

Flexible plastic mouldings for protection of wall underlay where dressed into openings in framing. Provides edge reinforcement of sills, for fixing flashing tape.

### Masons Seam & Repair Tapes

2.9 MASONS UNI® FAB SEAM & REPAIR TAPE

Waterproof seaming tape with pressure-sensitive polyacrylic adhesive and a central filament layer of reinforcement. Available in roll form, 0.5mm thick x 60mm wide x 25m long. Black or white.

### Masons Sealing & Underlay Accessories

2.10 MASONS™ PEF BACKING ROD

Cylindrical, flexible, extruded closed cell polyethylene foam rod. Available in 6-50mm diameter rods.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.11 MASONS PENETRATION SEALS

Flexible, conical moulded EPDM nozzle, on adhesive carrier base of flexible woven synthetic waterproof flashing. Two sizes available, to be trimmed to suit diameter of pipe penetration

2.12 MASONS WRAPSTRAP™ HOUSE WRAP STRAPPING

Blue embossed polythene strap, 19mm or 25mm wide.

2.13 MASONS INSULATION STRAP

Blue, 25mm wide polypropylene woven and coated straps

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Design, application and installation of Masons NZ products to NZBC E2/AS1, NZBC E2/AS4, CodeMark™ certification, Masons NZ Limited technical literature and MRM Code of Practice.

3.4 INSPECT SUBSTRATE

Before starting work, ensure that the substrate will allow work of the required standard. Carry out remedial work identified prior to installation.

### Application - Masons DPM & DPC

3.5 MASONS HYDRO™ SEAL DAMP-PROOF MEMBRANE

Apply with brush or roller, at temperature between 5°C - 50°C. Prepare surfaces by cleaning, smoothing and filling holes with mortar. Dampen surface prior to sealing. For porous surfaces, apply one primer coat consisting of one part clean water to one part Masons Hydro™ Seal. Allow 12 - 24 hours drying between all coats. Apply minimum of two top coats at the rate of 500ml per sq.m for each coat. Protect from sunlight at all times.

3.6 MASONS DRY FIX™ DPC

Install Masons Dry Fix™ polyethylene DPC between timber, including LOSP treated timber, concrete and steel, and between other dissimilar materials that require separation. Install in a single layer with 50mm overlaps at joints to provide a waterproof barrier. Fix with galvanized clouts at 300mm centres. Select appropriate roll width to cover required separation. Follow Masons installation instructions.

### Application - Masons Roof Underlays

3.7 MASONS VHP® ROOF UNDERLAYS

Masons VHP® Roof Underlays to be installed as per Masons installation instructions, and to meet current MRM COP.

Lay horizontally across framing, starting at lower edge of roof, with succeeding sheets in true alignment and lapping 150mm. Underlay support required only for spans over 1200mm.

Alternatively, lay vertically across framing starting at one edge of roof, with succeeding sheets in true alignment and lapping 150mm. Underlay support required for roofs under 10° pitch and/ or where span is greater that 1200mm.

Ensure underlay is taut to prevent ponding, and fix onto framing at 300mm centres using stainless steel 8-12mm staples or 20mm flat head clouts (or suitable proprietary fastenings) for timber framing. Or using self-drilling screws and washers (or suitable proprietary fastenings) for light steel framing. Install roof cladding within 21 days.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

If sealed laps are required, use Masons UNI® FAB Seam & Repair Tape or 40 Below™ Platinum Flashing Tape. Refer to MRM COP for more detail.

3.8 WEATHER CONDITIONS

Underlay may be installed in rain but extra care to be taken in windy conditions due to the large sail effect.

3.9 PENETRATIONS AND REPAIRS TO SHEET DAMAGE

Masons Roof Underlay must be free of rips and holes, fitted tightly and be lap taped around all penetrations (except flue penetrations), to assist with moisture and drainage. Flue penetrations must have a minimum distance of 50mm clear between underlay and flue, as required by MRM COP.

Make sheet repairs by patching with new material, with edges to lap damaged area by 150mm minimum and taping edges down. Repair small tears with Masons UNI® FAB Seam & Repair Tape or 40 Below™ Platinum Flashing Tape.

**Application - Masons Wall Underlays**

3.10 MASONS FLEXIBLE AIR BARRIERS - TIMBER FRAME

Fix horizontally as per Masons installation instructions, and NZBC E2/AS1, 9.1.6 Wall underlay, to outside face of framing (printed side facing out) in true alignment, with succeeding sheets overlapping 150mm. Ensure underlay is taut and extends from upper side of top plate to a minimum of 50mm below the bottom plate or bearer. Fix using UNI® fasteners and optionally with timber cavity battens according to Masons installation and fixing guides. Keep clean and undamaged until closed in.

UNI® FAB Soffit -
UNI® FAB Soffit is an optional 600mm width sheet fitted first along the upper section of walls. Sheet laps over lower sheets 150mm and is sealed with a built-in adhesive strip.

3.11 WALL OPENINGS

Run the underlay over opening and leave covered until windows and doors are ready to be installed. Form openings in the membrane, fold into the opening and fix to the framing. Cut off excess.

Follow Masons specified installation method, using flashing tape (Masons 40 Below™ Platinum / Flex) and Masons corner guard mouldings to provide a weathertight seal.
For UNI® PRO installations, or optionally for other UNI® applications, install Masons Dry Fix DPC up the jamb and under the head flashing.

3.12 EXPOSURE LIMIT AND TEMPORARY WEATHER PROTECTION

Install exterior cladding over Masons wall underlays as soon as practicable.

- Masons UNI® and UNI® PLUS Flexible Air Barriers may be exposed to the weather & ultra-violet light for up to 90 days.
- Masons UNI® PRO Flexible Air Barrier may be exposed to the weather & ultra-violet light for up to 150 days

During this time, Masons wall underlays may be used as a temporary weather protection sheathing. Ensure all joins are sealed using Masons UNI® FAB Seam and Repair Tape for UNI® and UNI® PLUS or using Masons 40 Below™ Platinum / Flex Flashing tape for UNI® PRO, and all penetrations sealed with Masons Penetration Seals. Roof cladding, soffit linings, windows and doors must be installed.

3.13 WEATHER CONDITIONS

When fixing the underlay in windy conditions, extra care must be taken due to the large sail area created by wide rolls.

3.14 REPAIR DAMAGE

Repair any damaged areas of the underlay, such as tears, holes or gaps around service penetrations. Repair damaged areas by covering with new material lapping the damaged area by at least 150mm and taping, or by taping small tears using appropriate Masons Seam and Repair Tape.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Application - Masons Flashing Tapes & Corner Guards

3.15 MASONS 40 BELOW™ FLASHING TAPES & CORNER GUARDS

Install Masons 40 Below™ Flashing Tape and if required, Corner Guards to NZBC E2/AS1, 9.1.4 Wall underlays to wall openings, for timber framing, or to NZBC E2/AS4, 9.1.5 for light steel framing and in accordance with Masons instructions.

3.16 FIXING OVER LOSP TIMBER

When applying Mason flashing tapes over LOSP treated timber, ensure the solvent has been allowed to flash off for a minimum of one week prior to the installation.

### Application - Masons Seam & Repair Tapes

3.17 MASONS UNI® FAB SEAM & REPAIR TAPE

Install Masons UNI® FAB Seam and Repair Tape for lapped seams and repairs to:

- Masons UNI® and UNI® PLUS flexible air barriers
- Masons VHP® roof underlays

all in accordance with Masons installation instructions.

### Application - Masons Sealing & Underlay Accessories

3.18 MASONS PEF BACKING ROD

Install Masons PEF backing rod to NZBC E2/AS1, 9.1.5 Air seals, or E2/AS4, 9.1.6 and in accordance with Masons instructions. Diameter of foam backing rod to be sized 25% - 30% larger than the width of the gap requiring filling.

3.19 MASONS PENETRATION SEALS

Install, in accordance with Masons installation instructions, select appropriately sized Masons Penetration Seals, and trim to suit pipe or wires penetrating wall underlay.

3.20 MASONS WRAPSTRAP™ HOUSE WRAP STRAPPING

Over wall underlay, install 19mm or 25mm wide WrapStrap horizontally at 300mm centres, draw taut and fix to studs with staples, screws or nails to prevent insulation bulging into cavity.

3.21 MASONS INSULATION STRAP

Over wall underlay, install 25mm wide polypropylene straps horizontally at 300mm centres, draw taut and fix to studs with staples, screws or nails to prevent insulation bulging into cavity.

### Completion

3.22 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4231HA JAMES HARDIE AXON™ PANEL CLADDING

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and fixing of James Hardie Axon™ Panel cladding.

1.1 RELATED WORK

4239JH JAMES HARDIE SOFFITS for James Hardie soffit lining

Refer to painting section/s for the protective coating required to meet the NZBC durability requirements.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:
LRV: Light Reflectance Value
CLD: Ceramic Low Density

**Documents**

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC C/AS1 | Protection from fire for buildings with sleeping (residential) and outbuildings (risk group SH) |
| NZBC C/AS2 | Protection from fire for buildings other than risk group SH |
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| AS/NZS 1170.2:2011 | Structural design actions - Wind actions |
| AS/NZS 2908.2 | Cellulose-cement products-Flat sheet |
| NZS 3602 | Timber and wood-based products for use in building |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| AS/NZS 3837 | Method of test for heat and smoke release rates for materials and products using an oxygen consumption calorimeter |
| NFPA 285:2019 | Standard fire test method for evaluation of fire propagation characteristics of exterior wall assemblies containing combustible components |

CodeMark Certificate CMNZ30165 - Axon™ Panel Cladding by James Hardie

1.4 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

James Hardie® documents relating to this part of the work:

Axon™ Panel Timber Cavity Batten Technical Specification March 2024
Axon™ Panel Fixed to Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Batten Technical Specification March 2024
Axon™ Panel Direct Fixed Technical Specification March 2024
Hardie™ Flex Sheet technical specification
Fire and Acoustic Design Manual by James Hardie, May 2025
BRANZ Appraisal 1211 [2022] - Axon™ Panel Cladding
BRANZ Appraisal 1285 (2025) - James Hardie Fire And Acoustic Wall Systems - Amended 16 June 2026

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | James Hardie New Zealand Limited |
| Web: | www.jameshardie.co.nz |
| Email: | info@jameshardie.co.nz |
| Telephone: | Ask James Hardie™ on 0800 808 868. |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Warranties

1.5 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 15 years: | For James Hardie Axon™ Panels (refer to James Hardie product warranty) |
| 15 year: | For accessories supplied by James Hardie (refer to James Hardie product warranty) |
| From: | Date of purchase |

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer's standard form.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.6 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any specified system, or associated components and products.

1.7 SAFE WORKING

To James Hardie requirements for safe working practices with James Hardie products, particularly with regards to cutting and drilling.

1.8 INFORMATION FOR OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Provide relevant James Hardie maintenance requirements at completion of the work.

### Performance - Wind

1.9 PERFORMANCE - WIND

James Hardie Axon™ Panel is suitable for use in all wind zones up to design wind pressure of 3.2kPa ULS and building height 25m maximum.

### Performance - Fire

1.10 EXTERNAL FIRE SPREAD - CLADDING SYSTEM AND MATERIALS

James Hardie Axon™ Panel cladding system is tested to NFPA 285 passing test criteria. Cladding materials achieve Type A classification to AS/NZS 3837 (peak heat release rate ≤ 100 kW/m², total heat release rate ≤ 25 MJ/m²).

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 WALL UNDERLAY

Refer to section 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC.

2.2 EXTERIOR STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTENS

Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Batten, 3000mm long, 70mm wide and 19mm thick manufactured from treated cellulose fibre, Portland cement, sand and water. Cured by high pressure autoclaving and manufactured to AS/NZS 2908.2. James Hardie Axon™ Panel and Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Batten installed as per the James Hardie technical specification demonstrate compliance with requirements of NZBC Sections B1, B2 and E2. The battens have both faces and all edges presealed.

2.3 EXTERIOR CAVITY CLOSER/VERMIN-PROOFING

Perforated uPVC, with upstands.

2.4 AXON™ PANEL

James Hardie Axon™ Panel, face primed shiplap jointed panels, 9.0mm and 8.5mm thick, manufactured from cellulose fibre reinforced cement to AS/NZS 2908.2. Refer to SELECTIONS.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.5 AXENT™ TRIM

Hardie™ Axent™ Trim, 45mm, 70mm and 89mm wide x 19mm thick, manufactured from cellulose fibre reinforced cement to AS/NZS 2908.2. Refer to SELECTIONS.

**Components**

2.6 FASTENER TYPE

Fasteners to minimum durability requirements of the NZBC. Refer to NZS 3604, section 4, **Durability**, for requirements for fixing's material to be used in relation to the exposure conditions.

Refer to NZBC E2/AS1, Table C.1.1.1A: Material selection, for fixing material, and NZBC E2/AS1, Table C.1.1.1B: Compatibility of materials in contact, for selection of suitable fixing materials and their compatibility with other materials.

| Zone | Fixings Material |
|---|---|
| Zone D, Zone E / Microclimates (incl. Geothermal) | Grade 316 Stainless |
| Zone B, Zone C | Hot-dipped galvanized |
| Bracing - All zones | Grade 316 Stainless |

Check against SED (specific engineering design) requirements for microclimate conditions.

Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.7 NAIL HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTEN FIXING - TIMBER FRAMING

| | |
|---|---|
| Over flexible wall underlay: | 65mm x 2.8mm RounDrive ring shank nail |
| Over 9mm RAB™ Board or where building height >10m: | 75mm x 3.06mm RounDrive ring shank nail |

Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.8 NAIL - AXON™ PANEL FIXING TO HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTEN

Axon™ Panel fixings to Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Batten, as follows:

For wind pressure up to 3.2kPa:

- stainless steel C-25 'T' Head brad nail.

2.9 NAIL - AXON™ PANEL FIXING TO TIMBER CAVITY BATTEN

| | |
|---|---|
| Over flexible wall underlay: | 65mm x 2.8mm Hardie™Flex nails |
| Over RAB™ Board: | 75mm x 3.15mm Hardie™Flex nails |

Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.10 NAIL - AXON™ PANEL DIRECT FIX

40mm x 2.8mm Hardie™Flex nails.

2.11 NAIL - AXENT™ TRIM

40mm brad nails.

**Accessories**

2.12 FLASHING TAPES - TIMBER CAVITY BATTEN

Inseal® 3259 black compressible medium density closed cell foam tape, 1.5mm thick x 48mm wide for vertical joints, and 1.5mm thick x 80mm wide for internal corners.

2.13 FLASHING TAPES - HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTEN

Polypropylene DPC under Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Batten internal corners. Refer to James Hardie® Axon™ Panel technical specification for selection of required width.

2.14 ALUMINIUM ACCESSORIES

Extruded aluminium etch primed. External box corners and horizontal 'h' flashing suitable for dark paints.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.15 ADHESIVE FOR HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTEN

Adhesive to be applied continuous 6mm thick bead(s) to the face of Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Batten to adhere the Axon™ Panel.

2.16 SEALANT

Flexible sealant. Refer to the sealant manufacturer's technical literature to confirm suitability for the application.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 STORAGE

Take delivery of products dry and undamaged on pallets, and keep on pallet. Protect edges and corners from damage and covered to keep dry until fixed.

3.2 HANDLING

Avoid distortion and contact with potentially damaging shiplap edges and surfaces. Do not drag panels across each other, or across other materials. Protect edges, corner and surface finish from damage.

3.3 SUBSTRATE

Do not commence work until the substrate is of the standard required for the specified finish; plumb, level and in true alignment. Moisture content of timber framing must not exceed the requirements specified by NZS 3602 to minimise shrinkage and movement after panels are fixed.

Confirm that 70mm minimum framing for vertical joints for timber cavity construction has been correctly installed.

3.4 SEAL EDGES

Seal site cut sheet edges prior to installation. Seal panel edges around window and door openings, meter boxes and at other penetrations.

3.5 SEAL CUT ENDS, HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTEN

Site cut batten ends to be between 20 - 45 degrees and sealed with Dulux 1 Step or Resene Quick Dry sealer prior to installation with the butt joint deflecting moisture to the exterior.

### Application - generally

3.6 FIX WALL UNDERLAY

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC.

3.7 HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTEN - TIMBER FRAME

Apply 150mm wide strip of DPC vertically to internal corners over continuous air barrier. Fix battens to all studs over the wall underlay using 65mm x 2.8mm RounDrive ring shank nails at fixing centres as per James Hardie Axon™ Panel Fixed to Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Batten Technical Specification, Table 4: Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity fixings. Refer to Table 6 for durability requirements of fixings.

3.8 PENETRATIONS AND FLASHINGS

Confirm that exterior wall openings have been prepared ready for the installation of all window and door frames and other penetrations through the cladding. Required preparatory work includes the following:

- Wall underlay appropriately incorporated with penetration and junction flashings.
- Materials lapped in a way that water tracks down to the exterior face of the wall underlay.
- Wall underlay to openings finished and dressed off ready for the installation of window and door frames and other penetrations
- Required holes in cladding accurately formed and cut to James Hardie requirements, ensure (if required) services penetration grommets/sleeves/seals/tapes are in place prior to cladding installation.
- Claddings neatly finished off to all sides of openings
- Installation of flashings (those required to be installed prior to installation of penetrating elements).


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Install Axon™ Panel cladding**

3.9 PANEL LAYOUT

All panel edges must be supported by the framing. Fix Axon™ Panels vertically.

3.10 FASTENER - SIZE AND LAYOUT

Fix Axon™ Panels to framing using the fixings specified in James Hardie® Axon™ Panel technical specifications and in accordance with the following requirements:

- Nails must have a minimum clearance of 18mm from sheet edges and a minimum of 75mm vertically and 150mm horizontally from sheet corners.
- Nails must finish flush with sheet surface.

3.11 FIXING - DIRECT FIXED TO FRAME

Fix with 40mm x 2.8mm Hardie™ Flex nails. Fix sheet at 200mm centres at all sheet edges as well as all intermediate framing. Alternatively fix with ND50 brad nails at 150mm centres.

3.12 FIXING - AXON™ PANEL OVER HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTEN

Apply continuous 6mm thick bead(s) of adhesive to the face of Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Batten to adhere the Axon™ Panel, and fix with C-25 brad nails at 150mm centres. Refer to Axon™ Panel technical specifications.

3.13 GUN NAILING

Axon™ Panels can be fixed using nail guns. The gun nails used must have a full round head to provide the required holding power. The length and gauge of nails must at a minimum be as specified in the James Hardie Axon™ Panel technical specifications.

3.14 VERTICAL JOINT

Joint Axon™ Panels in accordance with James Hardie Axon™ Panel technical specifications.

3.15 HORIZONTAL JOINT

Provide a horizontal joint at floor joist levels to accommodate the movement resulting from timber joist shrinkage and settlement. Install a 'z' flashing where drainage is required at floor level.

For Axon™ Panels use a Hardie™ 9mm Panel aluminium 'h' mould complete with 'h' mould jointer, external corner jointer or a Hardie™ 9mm aluminium angled 't' mould complete with angled 't' mould jointer, external corner jointer or a purpose made 'z' flashing to form a horizontal joint.

3.16 INTERNAL CORNER JOINT - HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTENS

Apply continuous 10mm beads of adhesive sealant to Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Battens. Seal site cut Axon™ Panel edges. Fix Hardie™ 9mm aluminium internal corner mould through Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Battens into framing. Position and fix Axon™ Panels through Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Battens into framing, fixings 18mm minimum from square edge of sheet in accordance with James Hardie Axon™ Panel Technical Specification details.

3.17 EXTERNAL CORNER JOINT - HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTENS

Install Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity Battens in accordance with James Hardie Axon™ Panel Technical Specification details. Seal site cut Axon™ Panel edges. Position and fix Axon™ Panels and Hardie™ 9mm Aluminium External Box corner or Hardie™ Alumnium Invert External Corner over battens, fixing in accordance with James Hardie Axon™ Panel Technical Specification details.

3.18 EXTERNAL CORNER JOINT WITH H MOULD

Fit Hardie™ 9mm Panel aluminium horizontal 'h' mould over lower Axon™ Panel and lap the upstand under upper Axon™ Panel. Leave 15mm gap maximum between upper and lower Axon™ Panels at the solid timber floor joist levels.

Fit Hardie™ 9mm Panel aluminium external box corner under the aluminium 'h' mould with flanges removed locally. Mitre the 'h' mould over box corner flashing to cover it. Install "h" mould external corner jointer over. The upper box corner flashings are to be finished flush with the bottom edge of upper Axon™ Panel.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

An aluminium corner flashing is required over the Hardie™ 9mm Panel aluminium horizontal flashing where the box corner is terminated under the 'h' mould. Hardie™ 9mm Panel aluminium external box corner flanges to be removed locally over the aluminium 'h' mould and corner underflashing to be lapped under the upper box corner flashing. Lap wall underlay over aluminium 'h' mould or seal to flashing with a flashing tape. Refer to Axon™ Panel technical specifications.

3.19 FIX AXENT™ TRIM

Fix Hardie™ Axent™ Trim to internal corners, external corners, vertical joints and intermediate vertical locations in accordance with James Hardie Axon™ Panel Technical Specification details.

3.20 FINISHING

Refer to painting section/s for protective coating system.

**Completion**

3.21 REPLACE

Replace all damaged or marked elements.

3.22 LEAVE

Leave work to the standard required for following procedures.

3.23 REMOVE

Remove debris, unused materials and elements from the site.

## 4 SELECTIONS

For further details on selections go to www.jameshardie.co.nz.
Substitutions are not permitted to the following, unless stated otherwise.

4.1 HARDIE™ CLD™ STRUCTURAL CAVITY BATTENS - TIMBER FRAME

| | |
|---|---|
| Brand/type: | Hardie™ CLD™ Structural Cavity batten |
| Thickness: | 19mm |
| Fastener type: | 65mm x 2.8mm RounDrive ring shank nails |
| Fastener finish: | Hot-dipped galvanized |
| Adhesive: | selected by contractor |

4.2 JAMES HARDIE AXON™ PANELS - SHEET CLADDING PANELS

| | |
|---|---|
| Brand/type: | James Hardie Axon Panel Smooth |
| Thickness: | 9mm |
| Fastener type: | C-25 straight 'T' - Head stainless steel brad nail for wind pressure up to 3.2kPa ULS |
| Fastener finish: | Hot-dipped galvanized |
| External corner type: | 4.4<br>Hardie™ Axent™ Trim |

4.3 JAMES HARDIE AXENT™ TRIM

| | |
|---|---|
| Brand/type: | Hardie™ Axent™ Trim |
| Thickness: | 19mm |
| Width: | Contractor to select |

**Finishing**

4.4 PAINTING

Refer to painting section/s for details.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4239JH JAMES HARDIE® SOFFITS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and fixing of James Hardie® soffit and eave linings.
It includes:

- James Hardie® Eclipsa™ Eaves Lining
- James Hardie® Hardie™ Flex Eaves Lining
- James Hardie® Hardie™ Groove Soffit Lining
- James Hardie® Villaboard™ Soffit Lining

### Documents

1.1 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| AS/NZS 1170.2:2011 | Structural design actions - Wind actions |
| AS/NZS 2908.2 | Cellulose-cement products - Flat sheet |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |

1.3 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer and supplier documents relating to this part of the work:

Eaves and Soffits Installation Manual by James Hardie® (Feb 2025)
Fire and Acoustic Design Manual by James Hardie, May 2025
James Hardie® Eclipsa™ Eaves Lining Product Technical Statement
James Hardie® Hardie™ Groove Lining Product Technical Statement
James Hardie® Villaboard™ Lining Product Technical Statement
James Hardie® Eaves and Soffit Care and Maintenance
BRANZ Appraisal 1285 (2025) - James Hardie Fire And Acoustic Wall Systems - Amended 16 June 2026

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | James Hardie New Zealand Limited |
| Web: | www.jameshardie.co.nz |
| Email: | info@jameshardie.co.nz |
| Telephone: | 0800 808 868 |

### Warranties

1.4 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 15 years: | For lining product and accessories |

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer/supplier standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of purchase

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.6 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

1.7 INFORMATION FOR OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Refer to the general section 1239 OPERATION & MAINTENANCE for provision of the following general operation and maintenance information as electronic PDF format documents:

James Hardie® Eaves and Soffit Care and Maintenance

### Performance

1.8 PERFORMANCE - UP TO AND INCLUDING VERY HIGH WIND ZONE

The design wind speeds/zones are to NZS 3604, up to and including Very High Wind Zone. Eaves and Soffits Installation Manual by James Hardie® requirements are suitable for these conditions.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 HARDIE™ FLEX EAVES LINING

James Hardie® Hardie™ Flex Eaves Lining 4.5mm and 6mm thick cellulose fibre reinforced cement sheet. Manufactured to AS/NZS 2908.2 from Portland cement, ground sand, cellulose fibre and water.

### Components

2.2 FASTENER TYPE

Fasteners to minimum durability requirements of the NZBC. Refer to NZBC E2/AS1, Table C.1.1.1A: Material selection, for fixing material, and NZBC E2/AS1, Table C.1.1.1B: Compatibility of materials in contact, for selection of suitable fixing materials and their compatibility with other materials.

| Exposure | Fixing | Fixing Material | Zone |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sheltered | Nail | Hot-dip galvanized steel | B |
| Sheltered | Nail | Stainless steel | B, C, D, E |
| Sheltered | Screw | Stainless steel | B, C, D, E |

Check against SED (specific engineering design) requirements for microclimate conditions. Refer to SELECTIONS for fastener type.

### Components - Hardie™ Flex Eaves Lining

2.3 SOFFIT JOINTERS AND MOULDS

Extruded uPVC jointer, capping and scotia mould.

2.4 HARDIE™ FLEX NAILS

Hardie™ Flex Nail, 40 x 2.8mm stainless steel or galvanized nail, Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.5 INSEAL TAPE

Inseal® 3259, 1.5mm thick x 48mm wide black compressible medium density closed cell foam tape.

2.6 POLYPROPYLENE TAPE

Polypropylene tape, 30mm minimum width.

### Components - General

2.7 FLEXIBLE JOINT SEALANT

Refer to SELECTIONS.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 3 EXECUTION

## Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Moisture content timber framing: 18% maximum

3.4 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

## Application - general

3.5 SHEET LAYOUT

All sheet edges must be fully supported by framing or rebates in fascia and barge boards.

3.6 CUTTING SOFFIT CLADDING

Cut sheets dry using score and snap method, hand guillotine method or fibreshear heavy duty method. If these methods are not feasible, use an alternative manufacturer approved method.

3.7 CIRCULAR HOLE FORMING

Mark the centre of the hole on the sheet, pre-drill a pilot hole. Use the pilot hole as a guide for a hole saw fitted to a heavy duty electric drill.

3.8 IRREGULAR HOLE FORMING

Drill a series of small holes around the perimeter of the proposed hole, tap out the waste piece from the sheet face.

3.9 INSTALL HARDIE™ FLEX EAVES LINING

Install in accordance with James Hardie® installation manual requirements. Refer to SELECTIONS for fixing and jointing methods.

3.10 BUTT JOINT

Paint sheet edges prior to installation.

3.11 CONTROL JOINT

Install control joint to James Hardie® installation manual requirements.

3.12 FASTENER - SIZE AND LAYOUT

Fix sheets to framing using fasteners as nominated in SELECTIONS. Fix to James Hardie® installation manual requirements.

3.13 SEALANTS

Application and use of sealants to manufacturer's instructions. Check with sealant manufacturer prior to coating over sealants.

3.14 PAINTING

Refer to painting section/s for protective coating system.

## Completion

3.15 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 4 SELECTIONS

For further details on selections go to www.jameshardie.co.nz
Substitutions are not permitted to the following, unless stated otherwise.

### Materials

4.1 HARDIE™ FLEX EAVES LINING

| | |
|---|---|
| Location: | Refer to Arch plans |
| Brand/type: | James Hardie® Hardie™ Flex Eaves Lining |
| Thickness: | 4.5mm |
| Width: | 450mm, 600mm, 750mm - 4.5mm thick sheet (2400mm length) |
| Fixing Method: | Hardie™ Flex nails (usual fixing method). |
| Fixing type: | Galvanized Hardie™ Flex Nail, 40 x 2.8mm |
| Joint detail: | Butt joint with 30mm wide polypropylene or flashing tape (1mm gap). |

### Painting

4.2 PAINTING

Refer to painting section/s for details.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4241RI ROOFING INDUSTRIES PROFILED METAL CLADDING

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and fixing of **Roofing Industries** profiled cladding complete with accessories.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC for underlays, foils and DPC.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are used throughout this part of the specification:

| | |
|---|---|
| BMT | Base metal thickness |
| NZMRM | New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc |
| MS | Modified silicone |
| LBP | Licensed Building Practitioner |

### Documents

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC C/AS1 | Protection from fire for buildings with sleeping (residential) and outbuildings (risk group SH) |
| NZBC C/AS2 | Protection from fire for buildings other than risk group SH |
| NZBC C/VM2 | Framework for fire safety design |
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| AS 1397 | Continuous hot-dip metallic coated steel sheet and strip - Coatings of zinc and zinc alloyed with aluminium and magnesium |
| AS 1530.2 | Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures - Test for flammability of materials |
| AS/NZS 2728 | Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications - Performance requirements |
| AS 3566 | Self-drilling screws for the building and construction industries |
| AS/NZS 4201.6 | Pliable building membranes and underlays - methods of test Method 6: Surface water absorbency |
| NZMRM CoP | NZ Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice |

1.4 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's documents relating to this part of the work:

Roofing Industries Technical Literature

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | Roofing Industries Ltd |
| Web: | www.roof.co.nz |
| Email: | techinfo@roof.co.nz |
| Telephone: | 0800 844 822 |

### Warranties

1.5 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 30 years | For paint will not flake, peel or excessively fade |
| 15 years | For substrate will not perforate through corrosion |

- Provide this warranty on the material manufacturer's standard Warranty Form
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.
For Warranty requirements in excess of this contact Roofing Industries.

1.6 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

5 years For workmanship

- Provide this warranty on the metal cladding installers standard warranty form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

NOTE: Include a copy of the Roofing Industries maintenance requirements with the warranty.
Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

**Requirements**

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.8 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any specified system, or associated components and products.

**Performance - General**

1.9 EXTERNAL FIRE SPREAD - CLADDING MATERIAL, NON-COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL

Roofing industries profiled metal claddings are a non-combustible substrate to NZBC C/AS1 and NZBC C/AS2, as composed of entirely steel or aluminium with a surface finish no more than 1mm in thickness.

## 2 PRODUCTS

**Materials**

2.1 STEEL - TYPE AM COATING (ALUMINIUM/ZINC/MAGNESIUM ALLOY), PREPAINTED

Formability steel sheet G550 for roll forming or G300 for flashings, coated to AS 1397. Prefinished /prepainted to AS/NZS 2728.

**Fixings**

2.2 FASTENERS GENERALLY

Fixings and fasteners are to be compatible with all materials, the environment and meeting the requirements of the NZ Building Code.

2.3 FIXING SCREWS

Screws to AS 3566 and Roofing Industries Profile Technical Summary fixing chart or Specific Engineered Design, with a minimum Class 4 or 5 durability and not less than the material being fixed. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.4 RIVETS

Sealed aluminium, minimum diameter 4.0mm. Refer to Roofing Industries for requirements.

**Components**

2.5 FLASHINGS GENERALLY

To NZBC E2/AS1, 4.0 Flashings.

Formable grade 0.55 BMT for coated and prepainted steel, and 0.90 BMT for aluminium to the same standards as the profiled sheets, notched where across profile or provided with a soft edge.

2.6 EXTERIOR CAVITY WALL BATTENS

Minimum H3.1 Radiata pine cavity battens, minimum 20mm thick and 45mm wide to NZBC E2/AS1 or proprietary cavity battens. Refer to relevant section for details.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.7 EXTERIOR CAVITY CLOSER/VERMIN-PROOFING

Proprietary aluminium, stainless steel and uPVC profiles with drainage holes/slots to NZBC E2/AS1.

2.8 CLOSURE STRIPS

Non-bituminous compressible, profiled foam strips to fit the sheet profile.

**Accessories**

2.9 WALL UNDERLAY

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC for wall underlays.

2.10 SEALANT

Neutral curing silicone sealant or polymer sealant as required by Roofing Industries and used as directed.

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions**

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

Store on a level firm base with packs well ventilated and completely protected from weather and damage. Do not allow moisture to build up between sheets.

Do not drag sheets across each other and other materials. Protect edges and surface finishes from damage. Use soft, flat sole shoes when fixing and for all other work on the roof.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Inspect the wall framing and supporting structure to ensure that it is complete and fully braced ready for cladding. Ensure that all necessary members are positioned so that flashings can be fastened at both edges through the cladding to the primary structure.

Ensure moisture content is:
Timber framing: 18% maximum
12-16% maximum under traverse flashings

When continuous metal cladding etc. Runs along a long continuous timber member and is directly fixed to it, the timbers equilibrium moisture content (EMC) to be 18% or less. For flashings in this situation (sometimes called transverse flashings) the framing EMC to be maximum 16%, and preferably as low as 12%. Transverse flashings can be temporarily tacked in place and final fixing done when moisture content is acceptable.

3.4 SEPARATION

Isolate dissimilar materials (metals and non-metals) in close proximity as necessary by painting the surfaces or fitting separator strips of compatible materials. Place isolators between metals and treated timber and cement based materials.

**Application**

3.5 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.6 INSTALLATION GENERALLY

Install Roofing Industries profiled metal cladding materials in accordance with NZMRM CoP and Roofing Industries requirements, to form a weather-tight performance for the completed cladding system, including all flashing/cappings and penetrations through the cladding.

3.7 PENETRATIONS

Confirm that exterior wall openings have been prepared ready for the installation of all window and door frames and other penetrations through the cladding. Required preparatory work includes the following:

- wall/cladding underlay to openings finished and dressed off ready for the installation of window and door frames and other penetrations.
- claddings neatly finished off to all sides of openings where appropriate.
- installation of flashings (those required to be installed prior to installation of penetrating elements).

3.8 SET-OUT FOR VERTICAL CLADDING

Set cladding to vertical plumb lines and maintain verticality. Set all exposed fixings with horizontal string lines. Carefully set out sheets with side laps away from the main line of sight, and with the widths of end sheets the same. Check during fixing to eliminate creep or spread and to keep fastenings in line.

3.9 MARKING AND CUTTING

Use ink pen, chalk line or coloured pencil for marking cladding sheets prior to cutting. Do not use lead pencil for marking Zincalume®, COLORSTEEL® and ColorCote®. Cut by shear only, using nibblers or hand snips. Remove all cutting and drilling debris.

3.10 FIX SHEETS

Fix sheets in place using the fastening system in accordance with Roofing Industries Profile Technical Summary - fixing chart to suit project wind loadings stated in the general section 1220 PROJECT or in accordance with specific design in accordance with project engineers requirements.

Use only screws as required by Roofing Industries. For timber purlins ensure minimum 30mm embedment and for steel purlins ensure minimum embedment of 3 threads. Paint colour matched fixings and accessories before installation.

3.11 END LAPS

End laps are not permitted, except where specifically detailed.

3.12 THERMAL MOVEMENT

Fix for Thermal Movement to Roofing Industries Profile Technical Summary for Selected Profile.

3.13 INSTALL FLASHINGS

Flash to parapets, roofs and penetrations to detail. Flashings to be installed on timber framing with a moisture content of less than 18%. Where no detail is provided flash to NZMRM CoP recommendations and Roofing Industries and NZBC E2/AS1 requirements. Cut accurately and fix using sealant and rivets to detail and to Roofing Industries requirements to form a weatherproof cover. For visible flashings, plan joints/junction to take account of the aesthetic requirements.

3.14 FLASHING PENETRATIONS

Flash all penetrations through the cladding. Fit pipe flashings with a proprietary collar flashing, with other penetrations flashed as detailed and to provide a weathertight installation. Ensure that flashings are set to avoid any ponding of water.

3.15 USE OF SEALANTS

Select and use sealants only as recommended by Roofing Industries. Apply sealant in two narrow beads transversely across flashing intersections, close to the two edges. Avoid exposing sealant on outside surfaces.

**Completion**

3.16 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4311RI ROOFING INDUSTRIES PROFILED METAL ROOFING

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and fixing of **Roofing Industries** profiled roofing complete with accessories.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC for underlays, foils and DPC.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are used throughout this part of the specification:

| | |
|---|---|
| BMT | Base metal thickness |
| NZMRM | New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc |
| MS | Modified silicone |
| LBP | Licensed Building Practitioner |

### Documents

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| BPS | Building Product Specifications |
| NZBC C/AS2 | Protection from fire for buildings other than risk group SH |
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| NZBC G12/AS1 | Water Supplies |
| AS 1397 | Continuous hot-dip metallic coated steel sheet and strip - Coatings of zinc and zinc alloyed with aluminium and magnesium |
| AS 1530.2 | Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures - Test for flammability of materials |
| AS/NZS 1665 | Welding of aluminium structures |
| AS/NZS 1734 | Aluminium and aluminium alloys - flat sheet, coiled sheet and plate |
| AS/NZS 2728 | Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications - performance requirements |
| AS 3566 | Self-drilling screws for the building and construction industries |
| AS/NZS 4020 | Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water |
| AS/NZS 4201.6 | Pliable building membranes and underlays - methods of test Method 6: Surface water absorbency |
| NZMRM CoP | NZ Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice |

1.4 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's documents relating to this part of the work:

Roofing Industries Profile Technical Summary

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | Roofing Industries Ltd |
| Web: | www.roof.co.nz |
| Email: | techinfo@roof.co.nz |
| Telephone: | 0800 844 822 |

### Warranties

1.5 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 50 years | For paint will not flake, peel or excessively fad |
| 18 years | For substrate will not perforate through corrosion |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- Provide this warranty on the material manufacturer's standard Warranty Form
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

1.6 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

5 years for workmanship

- Provide this warranty on the metal roofing installers standard warranty form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

NOTE: Include a copy of the Roofing Industries maintenance requirements with the warranty. Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

**Requirements**

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.8 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any specified system, or associated components and products.

**Performance - General**

1.9 DRINKING WATER

ColorCote® have been tested in accordance with AS/NZS 4020 and have passed the requirements for products in contact with drinking water in accordance with NZBC G12/AS1.

## 2 PRODUCTS

**Materials**

2.1 STEEL - TYPE AM COATING (ALUMINIUM/ZINC/MAGNESIUM ALLOY), PREPAINTED

Formability steel sheet G550 for roll forming or G300 for flashings, coated to AS 1397. Prefinished /prepainted to AS/NZS 2728.

**Fixings**

2.2 FASTENERS GENERALLY

Fixings and fasteners are to be compatible with all materials, the environment and meeting the requirements of the NZ Building Code.

2.3 FIXING SCREWS

Screws to AS 3566 and Roofing Industries Profile Technical Summary fixing chart or Specific Engineered Design, with a minimum Class 4 or 5 durability and not less than the material being fixed. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.4 RIVETS

Sealed aluminium, minimum diameter 4.0mm. Refer to Roofing Industries for requirements.

**Components**

2.5 FLASHINGS GENERALLY

To NZBC E2/AS1, 4.0 Flashings.

Formable grade 0.55 BMT for galvanized, coated and pre-painted steel, and 0.90 BMT for folded aluminium to the same standards as the profiled sheets, notched where across profile or provided with a soft edge.

2.6 BOOT FLASHINGS

Generally to NZBC E2/AS1, 8.4.12 Roof penetrations.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

EPDM proprietary pipe flashing laid on 45º bias to roofing, with over-flashing (soaker flashing) if required.
A boot flashing should be positioned so that it dams a roofing pan no more than 50%, if this cannot be avoided use an over-flashing back to the ridge and fix the boot flashing to that.

**Accessories**

2.7 UNDERLAY AND REFLECTIVE FOIL

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC for roof underlays.

2.8 SEALANT

Neutral curing silicone or MS polymer sealant as required by Roofing Industries and used as directed.

2.9 CLOSURE STRIPS

Non-bituminous compressible, profiled foam strips to fit the sheet profile.

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions**

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

Store on a level firm base with packs well ventilated and completely protected from weather and damage. Do not allow moisture to build up between sheets.

Do not drag sheets across each other and other materials. Protect edges and surface finishes from damage. Use soft, flat sole shoes when fixing and for all other work on the roof.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Inspect the roof framing and supporting structure to ensure that it is complete and fully braced ready for roofing and free from any misalignments or protrusions that could damage the roofing.

Ensure moisture content is:
Timber framing: 18% maximum
12-16% maximum under traverse flashings

When continuous metal roofing etc. Runs along a long continuous timber member and is directly fixed to it, the timbers equilibrium moisture content (EMC) to be 18% or less. For flashings in this situation (sometimes called transverse flashings) the framing EMC to be maximum 16%, and preferably as low as 12%. Transverse flashings can be temporarily tacked in place and final fixing done when moisture content is acceptable.

3.4 SEPARATION

Isolate dissimilar materials (metals and non-metals) in close proximity as necessary by painting the surfaces or fitting separator strips of compatible materials. Place isolators between metals and treated timber and cement based materials.

**Application**

3.5 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.6 FIXING GENERALLY

Install and fix in accordance with the NZMRM CoP recommendations, and to Roofing Industries requirements, to form a weather-tight performance for the completed roofing system, including all junctions, flashing/cappings and penetrations through the roofing.

3.7 PENETRATIONS AND JUNCTIONS

Check that adjoining walls and parapets are prepared ready for the installation of the roofing. Confirm that openings have been prepared ready for the installation of skylights and other penetrations through the roof.

Required work includes the following:

- underlay turned up at wall and parapet lines
- underlay finished and dressed off to all openings, ready for the installation of skylights and other penetrations
- roofing installation neatly finished to all sides of openings and to all wall and parapet junctions
- installation of flashings (those required to be installed prior to installation of penetrating elements and/or wall linings).

3.8 SET-OUT

Carefully set out with consideration of the position of side laps to take account of the prevailing wind and line of sight. Ensure all sheets are square and oversailing the gutter true to line. Check during fixing to eliminate creep or spread and string lines along purlin centres to keep fastenings in line.

3.9 MARKING AND CUTTING

Use ink pen, chalk line or coloured pencil for marking roof sheets prior to cutting. Do not use lead pencil for marking Zincalume®, Colorsteel® and ColorCote®. Cut by shear only, using nibblers or hand snips. Remove all cutting and drilling debris from the roof.

3.10 FIX SHEETS

Fix sheets in place using the fastening system in accordance with Roofing Industries Profile Technical Summary - fixing chart to suit project wind loadings stated in the general section 1220 PROJECT or in accordance with specific design in accordance with project engineers requirements.

Use only screws as required by Roofing Industries. For timber purlins ensure minimum 30mm embedment and for steel purlins ensure minimum embedment of 3 threads. Paint colour matched fixings and accessories before installation.

3.11 THERMAL MOVEMENT

Fix for Thermal Movement to Roofing Industries Profile Technical Summary for Selected Profile.

3.12 END LAPS

End laps are not permitted, except where specifically detailed.

3.13 STOP ENDS AND DOWNTURNS

Form stop-ends at the upper end of sheets. Form downturns at the gutter line where the roof pitch is less than 8 degrees. Form using the required tools.

3.14 INSTALL FLASHINGS

Flash roof to parapets, walls and penetrations to detail. Flashings to be installed on timber framing with a moisture content of less than 20%. Where no detail is provided flash to NZMRM CoP recommendations and Roofing Industries and NZBC E2/AS1 requirements. Cut accurately and fix using sealant and rivets to detail and to Roofing Industries requirements to form a weatherproof cover. For visible flashings, plan joints/junction to take account of the aesthetic requirements.

3.15 USE OF SEALANTS

Select and use sealants only as recommended by Roofing Industries. Apply sealant in two narrow beads transversely across flashing intersections, close to the two edges. Avoid exposing sealant on outside surfaces.

3.16 FLASHING PENETRATIONS

Flash all penetrations through the roof. Fit pipe flashings with a proprietary collar flashing, with other penetrations flashed as detailed and to provide a weathertight installation. Ensure that flashings are set to avoid any ponding of water.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## Completion

3.17 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4521 ALUMINIUM WINDOWS AND DOORS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the manufacture, supply, and installation of:

- aluminium windows
- aluminium doors and frames
- hardware and furniture
- overhead glazing
- flashings

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to glazing sections for glass types

### 1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND TERMS

| | |
|---|---|
| SLS | Serviceability limit state |
| ULS | Ultimate limit state |
| WGANZ | Window & Glass Association NZ |
| PQAS | Powder Coating Quality Assurance System |

**Documents**

### 1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| NZBC F4/AS1 | Safety from falling |
| NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 | Energy efficiency |
| NZBC H1/VM1-VM2 | Energy efficiency |
| AS/NZS 1170.2:2011 | Structural design actions - Wind actions |
| NZS 1170.5 | Structural design actions - Earthquake actions - New Zealand |
| AS/NZS 1580.108.1 | Methods of test for paints and related materials - Determination of dry film thickness on metallic substrates - Non destructive methods |
| AS/NZS 1734 | Aluminium and aluminium alloys - flat sheets, coiled sheet and plate |
| AS/NZS 1866 | Aluminium and aluminium alloys - Extruded rod, bar, solid and hollow shapes |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| AS 3715 | Metal finishing - Thermoset powder coatings for architectural applications |
| NZS 4211 | Specification for performance of windows |
| NZS 4223.3 | Glazing in buildings - Human impact safety requirements |
| AS/NZS 4680 | Hot-dip galvanized (zinc) coatings on fabricated ferrous articles |
| BS EN 673 | Glass in building - Determination of thermal transmittance (U-value) - Calculation method |
| AAMA 2603 | Voluntary specification, performance requirements, and test procedures for pigmented organic coatings on aluminium extrusions and panels (with coil coating appendix) |
| AAMA 2604 | Voluntary specification, performance requirements and test procedures for high performance organic coatings on aluminium extrusions and panels. |
| AAMA 2605 | Voluntary specification, performance requirements and test procedures for superior performing organic coatings on aluminium extrusions and panels. |
| BS 3900 | Methods of tests for paints, Part C5: Determination of film thickness |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| ISO 10077-1 | Thermal performance of windows, doors and shutters - Calculation of thermal transmittance - General |
| ISO 10077-2 | Thermal performance of windows, doors and shutters - Calculation of thermal transmittance - Numerical method for frames |
| BRANZ BU 636 | Protecting Glass From Damage |

Window & Glass Association NZ (WGANZ) documents:

| | |
|---|---|
| Window Installation Guide | Guide to Window Installation as described in E2/AS1 |
| PQAS | Powder Coating Quality Assurance System |
| SFA 3503-03 | Anodic Oxide coatings on wrought aluminium for external architectural application (2005) |

US Federal Specification:

| | |
|---|---|
| TT-S-001543A | Sealing compound, silicone rubber base (for caulking, sealing and glazing in buildings and other structures) |
| TT-S-00230C | Sealing compound, elastomeric type, single component (for caulking, sealing and glazing in buildings and other structures) |

**Warranties**

1.4 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER / SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

5 years: For fabrication

Refer to the general section for the required form of 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT and details of when completed warranty must be submitted.

1.5 WARRANTY - INSTALLER / APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

2 years: For installation

- Provide this warranty in the installer/applicator standard form.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

**Requirements**

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

Work to be carried out by trades people experienced, competent and familiar with the materials and techniques specified.

1.7 COMPLIANCE

Windows and doors to be manufactured and installed to NZBC E2/AS1.

1.8 CERTIFICATION

Provide evidence of a certificate by a laboratory accredited by International Accreditation of New Zealand that the windows and doors offered comply with the requirements of NZS 4211.

**Performance**

1.9 PERFORMANCE - WINDOWS AND DOORS

To NZS 4211, including:

- deflection, opening sashes, air infiltration, water penetration, ultimate strength, torsional strength of sashes, marking.

Refer to SELECTIONS.

1.10 PERFORMANCE - STRUCTURAL/WEATHER-TIGHTNESS

The structural and weather-tight performance of the completed joinery, the glazing and infill panels is the responsibility of the window manufacturer.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.11 PERFORMANCE - THERMAL, HOUSING ONLY

Thermal performance of windows & doors to NZBC H1/AS1. The construction R-Value of windows & doors determined by Appendix E, Table E1.1.1 Construction R-values (R window) of selected generic windows and doors. Refer to SELECTIONS for construction R-values.

1.12 PERFORMANCE - THERMAL

Thermal performance of windows & doors to NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 & NZBC H1/VM1-VM2. The construction R-value of windows & doors determined in accordance with Appendix E, E1 Vertical windows and doors:

- Determine the thermal transmittance of window & doors in accordance with ISO 10077-1.
- Determine the thermal transmittance of framing in accordance with ISO 10077-2.
- Determine the thermal transmittance of glazing using BS EN 673.

Refer to SELECTIONS for construction R-values.

**Performance - Wind (design by contractor)**

1.13 WIND - NON SPECIFIC DESIGN

Design the installation to the wind zone parameters of NZS 3604, table 5.4.

Refer to SELECTIONS for wind zone.

**Finishes**

1.14 CERTIFY COATINGS - POWDER COATING

Certify on request, compliance with this specification and support with control and sampling records. Test for film thickness to BS 3900, part C5, method No. 4, using method (b) or to AS/NZS 1580.108.1 for certifying thickness and method (a) where any dispute arises as to the thickness provided.

The coating should be applied by an applicator who can certify that the coating has been applied in accordance with the specification.

## 2 PRODUCTS

**Materials**

2.1 WINDOWS

Refer to SELECTIONS for type and finish.

2.2 DOORS

Refer to SELECTIONS for type and finish.

2.3 ALUMINIUM EXTRUSIONS

Alloy designation to comply with AS/NZS 1866. Branded and extruded for anodising or powder coating.

2.4 ALUMINIUM SHEET AND STRIP

Complying with AS/NZS 1734 of suitable thickness. Rolled for anodising or powder coating.

Alloy designation: 5251 - H16 or 5005 - H16

2.5 STAINLESS STEEL SHEET AND STRIP

Type: 316 austenitic steel
Finish grade: 2B (satin lustre)

2.6 GLASS

Refer to the glazing section for glass types and installation.

2.7 REVEALS - TIMBER PAINTED

Timber reveals for paint finish with all sides primed grooved for wall linings or flush finished for architraves.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.8 FLASHINGS GENERALLY

To NZBC E2/AS1, 9.1.9 Windows and doors. Material, grade and colour of head flashings to match the window frames. Ensure that materials used for head, jamb and sill flashings are compatible with the window frame materials and fixings and cladding materials.

**Components - for cavity systems**

2.9 STANDARD CAVITY CLOSER

A perforated device constructed from either aluminium or PVC to close the cavity above the window or door unit, between the cladding and head flashing, to provide ventilation in accordance with NZBC E2/AS1 to the spaces above the window or door.

2.10 SUPPORT BAR

WGANZ extruded aluminium support bar with built in drainage and ventilation to NZBC E2/AS1, to provide continuous support to the window unit. Size to suit cladding type.

**Components**

2.11 GLAZING GASKETS

Thermoplastic rubber. Do not stretch glazing gaskets during installation. Measure and cut gaskets 5-10% over length before installation.

2.12 HARDWARE AND FURNITURE

Hinges, stays, catches, fasteners, latches, locks and furniture as offered by the window and door manufacturer. Refer to SELECTIONS for type and finish. Key alike all lockable window hardware able to be keyed alike.

2.13 SAFETY STAYS

Stainless steel non releasable restrictors to limit window opening to NZBC F4/AS1, Section 2.0, **Opening windows**.

**Sealants**

2.14 STRUCTURAL SEALANT

Silicone chemically curing sealant specifically formulated and tested or approved equivalent with not less than a ± 40% movement factor complying with US Federal Specification TT-S-001543A.

2.15 WEATHERING / INSTALLATION SEALANT

Building sealant used in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for weather sealing aluminium frames to the cladding, complying with US Federal Specification TT-S-001543A, or a one-part polyurethane moisture curing, elastic joint sealant of medium modulus (± 25% movement) to US Federal Specification TT-S-00230C.

2.16 FOAM TAPE

Foam tape to NZBC E2/AS1, paragraph 9.1.9.9.

**Finishes**

2.17 POWDER COATED ALUMINIUM - EXTRA-DURABLE POLYESTER

Polyester powder organic coating in accordance with WGANZ PQAS, AS 3715, and AAMA 2603

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions - generally**

3.1 DO NOT DELIVER

Do not deliver to site any elements which cannot be unloaded immediately into suitable conditions of storage.

3.2 UNLOAD WINDOW JOINERY

Unload, handle and store elements in accordance with the window manufacturer's requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.3 AVOID DISTORTION

Avoid distortion of elements during transit, storage and handling.

3.4 PREVENT DAMAGE

Prevent prefinished surfaces rubbing together, and contact with mud, plaster and cement. Keep paper and cardboard wrappings dry.

3.5 PROPRIETARY ELEMENTS

Fix in accordance with the window manufacturer's requirements.

3.6 PROTECTIVE COVERINGS

Retain protective coverings and coatings to BRANZ BU 636 and keep in place during the fixing process. Provide protective coverings and coatings where required to prevent marking of surfaces visible in the completed work and to protect aluminium joinery from following trades. Remove protection on completion.

3.7 ADDITIONAL PROTECTION

Supply and fix additional protection as necessary to prevent marking of surfaces which will be visible on completed work.

**Conditions - fixings and fastenings**

3.8 SUPPLY OF FIXINGS

Use only fixings and fastenings recommended by the manufacturer of the component being fixed and to comply with the ULS wind pressure stated in SELECTIONS. Ensure fixings and fastenings exposed to the weather are of aluminium, or Type 316 stainless steel or if not exposed to the weather may they be hot-dip galvanized steel with a coating weight of 610 g/m² complying with AS/NZS 4680.

3.9 INSTALLATION FIXING

To NZBC E2/AS1, paragraph 9.1.9.10. Fix windows/doors through reveal to frame with a pair of 75 x 3.15mm minimum galvanised jolt head nails or a pair of 8 gauge x 65mm minimum stainless steel screws. Fix at a maximum of 450 centres along all reveals and a maximum of 150mm from reveal ends. Ensure fixings do not penetrate metal flashings.

Install packers between reveals and framing at fixing points, except at the head.

**Assembly**

3.10 FABRICATION

Fabricate frames as detailed on shop drawings. Install glazing, hinges, stays and running gear as scheduled. Provide temporary bracing and protection. Temporarily secure all opening elements for transportation.

3.11 TIMBER / PVC REVEALS

Before fixing to aluminium frames, ensure that timber reveals which are being painted have been primed on all surfaces.

3.12 HARDWARE GENERALLY

Factory fit all required and scheduled hardware. Account for all keys and deliver separately to the site manager.

3.13 SAFETY STAYS

Factory fit safety stays to all windows scheduled for safety stays and to all windows where safety stays are required to comply with NZBC F4/AS1 4.0, Opening windows.

**Installation - windows and doors**

3.14 CORROSION PROTECTION

Before fixing, apply suitable barriers of bituminous coatings, stops or underlays between dissimilar metals in contact, or between aluminium in contact with concrete.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.15 CONFIRM PREPARATION OF EXTERIOR WALL OPENINGS

Confirm that exterior wall openings have been prepared ready for the installation of all window and door frames. Do not proceed with the window and door installation until required preparatory work has been completed.

Required preparatory work includes the following:

- wall underlay/building wrap to openings finished and dressed off ready for the installation of window and door frames to NZBC E2/AS1, 9.1.4 Wall underlays to wall openings.
- Full height 20mm jamb battens to NZBC E2/AS1, Figure 9.1.9.4: General window and door opening for direct fixed (direct fix only)
- claddings neatly finished off to all sides of openings
- installation of flashings (those which are required to be installed prior to frames).

3.16 INSTALLATION

Fix to comply with the reviewed shop drawings and installation details including flashings and bedding compounds, pointing sealants and weathering sealants.

3.17 INSTALLATION CAVITY CONSTRUCTION

Install to WGANZ Window Installation Guide details and drawings including WGANZ sill support bars.

For thresholds with support bars fixed through membranes, pre-fill support bar screw holes with silicone sealant to NZBC E2/AS1, Figure 8.5.6.1D: Junctions with walls for membrane.

3.18 INSTALL FLASHINGS

Install flashings to heads, jambs and sills of frames as supplied and required by the window manufacturer and as detailed on the drawings. Finish head flashings to match window finish.

Place all flashings so that the head flashing weathers the jamb flashings, which in turn weathers over the upstand of the sill flashing. Ensure that sill flashings drain to the outside air.

Except where window/door frames are recessed, ensure that head flashings over-sail unit by 20mm minimum plus any jamb scriber width at each end.

3.19 COMPLETE AIR SEAL

To NZBC E2/AS1, 9.1.5 Air seals. Form an air-tight seal by means of a proprietary expanding foam or sealants used with backing rods, applied between the window / door reveal and structural framing to a depth of 10 - 20mm, to provide a continuous air tight seal to the perimeter of the window or door.

3.20 FIX HARDWARE

Fix all sash and door hardware and furniture as scheduled.

**Application - jointing and sealing**

3.21 SEAL FRAMES ON SITE

Seal frames to each other and to adjoining structure and finishes, all as required by the window manufacturer and to make the installation weathertight. In very high and extra high or greater wind zones, seal between the window head and the head flashing. Do not seal the junction between the sill member and the cladding or sill flashing which must remain open.

3.22 PREPARE JOINTS

Ensure joints are dry. Remove loose material, dust and grease. Prepare joints in accordance with the sealant manufacturer's requirements, using required solvents and primers where necessary. Mask adjoining surfaces which would be difficult to clean if smeared with sealant.

3.23 BACK UP

When using back-up materials do not reduce depth of joint for sealant to less than the minimum required by the manufacturer of the sealant. Insert polyethylene rod or tape back-up behind joints being pointed with sealant.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.24 SEALANT FINISH

Tool sealant to form a smooth fillet with a profile and dimensions required by the sealant manufacturer. Remove excess sealant from adjoining surfaces, using the cleaning materials nominated by the sealant manufacturer and leave clean.

**Completion - cleaning**

3.25 REMOVE TRADE DEBRIS

Remove trade debris by appropriate means on a floor by floor basis as each floor is completed and again before any work is covered up by others. Arrange for general removal.

3.26 TRADE CLEAN

Trade clean window frames, operable windows and doors, glass and other related surfaces inside and out at the time of installation to remove marks, dust and dirt, to enable a visual inspection of all surfaces.

**Completion**

3.27 PROTECTIVE COVERINGS

Retain protective coverings and coatings and keep in place during the fixing process. Provide protective coverings and coatings where required to prevent marking of surfaces visible in the completed work and to protect aluminium joinery from following trades.

3.28 SAFETY

Indicate the presence of transparent glasses for the remainder of the contract period, with whiting, tape or signs compatible with the glass type. Indicators other than whiting must not be applied to the glass surface. Masking tape must not be used for this purpose.

3.29 IN SITU TOUCH-UP TO POWDER COATED ALUMINIUM

In situ touch-up of polyester or fluoropolymer coated aluminium is only permitted only to minor surface scratching. Otherwise replace all damaged material.

3.30 REMOVE

At the appropriate stage of the project, remove safety indicators and protective coverings and wipe down all joinery thoroughly.

3.31 REPLACE

Replace damaged, cracked or marked elements.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4553PD PARKWOOD EXTERIOR DOORS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and manufacture of Parkwood Products Ltdexterior entrance doors and frames.
It includes:

- Doors and frames
- Components and accessories to complete the installation

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to GLAZING sections for glazing
Refer to PAINTING section/s for paint finishes
Refer to HARDWARE section for door hardware

**Documents**

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 | Energy efficiency |
| NZBC H1/VM1-VM2 | Energy efficiency |
| AS/NZS 1866 | Aluminium and aluminium alloys - Extruded rod, bar, solid and hollow shapes |
| NZS 3602 | Timber and wood-based products for use in building |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 3610 | Specification for profiles of mouldings and joinery |
| AS 3715 | Metal finishing - Thermoset powder coatings for architectural applications |
| NZS 4214 | Methods for determining the total thermal resistance of parts of buildings |
| NZS 4223.3 | Glazing in buildings - Human impact safety requirements |
| BS EN 673 | Glass in building - Determination of thermal transmittance (U-value) - Calculation method |
| ISO 10077-1 | Thermal performance of windows, doors and shutters - Calculation of thermal transmittance - General |
| ISO 10077-2 | Thermal performance of windows, doors and shutters - Calculation of thermal transmittance - Numerical method for frames |

Window & Glass Association NZ (WGANZ) documents:

| | |
|---|---|
| PQAS | Powder Coating Quality Assurance System |

1.3 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer and supplier documents relating to this part of the work:

- Parkwood Doors The Home Collection - Catalogue
- Parkwood Door Furniture - Brochure

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Web: | www.parkwooddoors.co.nz |
| Email: | sales@parkwooddoors.co.nz |
| Telephone: | 0800 101028 |

**Warranties**

1.4 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| 5 years: | For Parkwood solid timber doors |
| 10 years: | For Duramax fibreglass doors |
| 10 years: | For Parkwood aluminium doors |
| 10 years: | For powder coating on aluminium |

- Provide this standard warranty on the manufacturer/supplier standard form (if not available use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of Practical Completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

Parkwood warranties are void if the 'Guarantee of Quality' requirements are not followed (refer to the tag on all doors or the Parkwood website).

### Requirements

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.6 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the Parkwood specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

### Performance - thermal

1.7 PERFORMANCE - THERMAL

Thermal performance of glazed doors to NZBC H1/AS1. The construction R-Value of doors to be determined by Appendix E, Table E1.1.1 Construction R-values of selected doors.

1.8 PERFORMANCE - THERMAL, OPAQUE DOORS

Thermal performance of opaque doors and door panels to NZBC H1/AS1. The construction R-Value of opaque doors and door panels to be determined by NZS 4214. Refer to SELECTIONS for details.

### Finishes

1.9 IN-SITU TOUCH-UP

In-situ touch-up of coating is only permitted after receiving written direction from the Contract Administrator. Replace damaged material not able to be restored to as-new condition.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Aluminium exterior doors

2.1 ALUMINIUM DOOR LEAF - THERMTEK

To AS/NZS 1866. Parkwood Thermtek thermally insulated doors, double glazed and fitted with rubber thermal break, reducing condensation and sound transmission. Branded and extruded for powder coating. Available in a range of styles, colours, and sizes, with optional glazed vision panels. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.2 PAINT - COMPOSITE DURAMAX DOORS

Refer to PAINTING sections.

### Frames

### Components

2.3 DOOR HARDWARE - GENERAL

Refer to 5521 HARDWARE section.

2.4 DOOR HARDWARE - PARKWOOD RANGE

Parkwood door hardware, including gripsets, handles and locks. Refer to SELECTIONS.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.5 GLASS

Refer to GLAZING sections for glass type and thickness. To NZS 4223.3 for human impact safety requirements.

2.6 EXTERIOR FACINGS AND SCRIBERS

Treated H3.1 facings and scribers to NZS 3610, to profiles as detailed.

2.7 FLASHING GENERALLY

Head, jamb and sill flashing material to be compatible with door frame, fixings, and cladding materials.

2.8 METAL FASTENINGS

Stainless steel or non-corrodible metal.

2.9 SCREWS

Stainless steel or other non-corrodible metal. Length sufficient to penetrate into the background support up to the shank. Screws for fixing hinges, hardware or furniture to match the item being attached.

2.10 NAILS

Length sufficient to penetrate into the background support at least half the nail length, except if into Radiata pine, then three-fifths their length.

2.11 HINGES

Size and gauge appropriate to carry door size and weight. Refer to SELECTIONS.

**Finish - Aluminium**

2.12 POWDER COATED ALUMINIUM - EXTRA-DURABLE POLYESTER

Polyester powder organic coating in accordance with WGANZ PQAS, AS 3715, and AAMA 2603

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions**

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 CHECK ALL OPENINGS

Check all openings on site for size and standard of execution before installing Parkwood door frames.

3.4 CONFIRM PREPARATION OF EXTERIOR WALL OPENINGS

Confirm that exterior wall openings have been prepared ready for the installation of door frames. Do not proceed with the door installation until required preparatory work has been completed.

Required preparatory work includes the following:

- Wall underlay/building wrap to openings finished and dressed off ready for the installation of door frames to NZBC E2/AS1, 9.1.4 Wall underlays to wall openings.
- Full height 20mm jamb battens to NZBC E2/AS1, Figure 9.1.9.4: General window and door opening for direct fixed, (direct fix only).
- Claddings neatly finished off to all sides of openings
- Installation of flashing (that which is required to be installed prior to frames).


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## Assembly

3.5 FABRICATION GENERALLY

Manufacture and fabricate Parkwood frames and doors as detailed. Install hinges and running gear as scheduled.

3.6 HINGES

Fit hinges to Parkwood doors appropriate to support the door size and weight - minimum of;

| | |
|---|---|
| 3 hinges | Doors up to 2.2 metres |
| 4 hinges | Doors 2.2 - 2.6 metres |
| 5 hinges | Doors 2.6 - 5.0 metres |

3.7 FACTORY FINISHING

Before delivery to site:

- Prime all rebates, and concealed faces with a suitable material-compatible primer.
- Brace square and provide protection to assemblies during delivery to site. Where factory glazed, indicate the presence of transparent glass with whiting, tape or signs compatible with the glass type.

3.8 ON SITE FINISHING

Before installation:

- Prime assemblies scheduled for paint finish not already primed with a material appropriate primer.
- Prime all rebates and concealed faces of beads of assemblies scheduled for clear finish with a material appropriate primer.
- Re-prime/seal any subsequently cut edge.
- Refer to PAINTING sections for finishing.

## Installation - frames

3.9 FIXING FRAMES

Fit flashings to frame and framing as required. Fix with corrosion resistant fixings and assemble frames rigidly in place, plumb, level and true to line and face without distortion and with all Parkwood doors fully and easily operating. Ensure fixings are adequate in vicinity of hinges and opposite lock / latch. Fit facings, scribers, draught-stopping and sealants.

3.10 ALUMINIUM FRAMES - TIMBER REVEALS

Screw or nail through reveals to NZBC E2/AS1, paragraph 9.1.9.10. Install packers at fixing points except at head.

## Installation - doors

3.11 INSTALL GLAZING PANELS

Prime rebates and beads; install sealant backing strips or silicone. Install dry beading to outside of panels as selected. Do not mitre corners of beads.

3.12 INSTALL HARDWARE

Install latches, locks and door hardware in accordance with manuacturers requirements.

3.13 CHECK

Check the operation of all Parkwood doors and hardware before completion of installation and adjust if required.

## Completion

3.14 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4555 GARAGE DOORS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the manufacture, supply and installation of garage door systems including required opening/operating systems.

1.1 RELATED WORKS

Refer to 4521 ALUMINIUM WINDOWS & DOORS for all other doors and windows

### Documents

1.2 DOCUMENTS REFERRED TO

Documents referred to in this section are:

| | |
|---|---|
| AS/NZS 1170 | Structural design actions |
| AS/NZS 1170.2: 2011 | Structural design actions - Wind actions |
| NZS 1170.5 | Structural design actions - Earthquake actions - New Zealand |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| AS/NZS 4505 | Garage doors and other large access doors |

Documents listed above and cited in the clauses that follow are part of this specification. However, this specification takes precedence in the event of it being at variance with the cited document.

### Requirements

1.3 INFORMATION FOR OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Provide operating instructions for the garage doors and associated opening equipment. Provide a list of all components requiring regular maintenance.

### Performance

1.4 DESIGN PARAMETERS WIND

Design the installation to the manufacturers requirements and as appropriate for the project wind design stated in the general section 1220 PROJECT.

1.5 LOADS - NON - SPECIFIC DESIGN - DOORS UP TO 3.0M HIGH

Garage doors complete with hinges, roller assemblies and fasteners to comply with wind performance requirements to NZS 3604.

1.6 RESPONSIBILITY FOR PERFORMANCE

Accept responsibility for the structural and weathertight performance of the completed garage door installation.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GARAGE DOOR

Manufacture to AS/NZS 4505 complete with a compliance label.

2.2 MOTORISED DOOR OPENER

selected by contractor

## 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION FOR INSTALLATION

Check that the trimmed and lined openings are formed and constructed to suit the required door units. Do not proceed until openings are properly formed.

3.2 MANUFACTURER'S REQUIREMENT FOR INSTALLATION

Install door, track and operating equipment complete with all specified and necessary accessories and hardware to the manufacturer's requirements.

3.3 START UP

Carry out start up procedures and verify proper performance of the doors.

3.4 ADJUSTMENT

Lubricate bearings and sliding parts and adjust doors to operate easily, free of warp, twist or distortion with a weathertight fit round the entire perimeter.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

Carry out start up procedures and verify proper performance of the door. Demonstrate the operation of the door to the principal/principal's representative. Set security features to principal's requirements. Reset security features at practical completion of the contract works.

### Completion

3.6 ENSURE

Ensure all elements are free of marks or blemishes, with all moving parts working fully and freely.

3.7 REPLACE

Replace damaged, cracked or marked elements.

3.8 LEAVE

Leave work to the standard required by following procedures.

3.9 REMOVE

Remove all debris, unused materials and elements from the site.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4610 GLAZING RESIDENTIAL

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and fixing of glass products for external and internal joinery in residential type buildings and includes:

- windows and doors
- frameless shower and bath screens
- splashbacks, wall linings
- balustrade systems, pool fences
- mirrors and mirror frames

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 4521 ALUMINIUM WINDOWS AND DOORS for aluminium joinery

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| PVB | Polyvinyl Butyral |
| CIP | Cast in place |

### Documents

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC B2/AS1 | Durability provisions for building elements |
| NZBC F4/AS1 | Safety from falling |
| NZBC F9/AS1 | Means of restricting access to residential pools |
| NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 | Energy Efficiency |
| NZBC H1/VM1-VM2 | Energy Efficiency |
| AS/NZS 1170.2: 2011 | Structural design actions - Wind actions |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 4211 | Specification for performance of windows |
| NZS 4223.1 | Glazing in buildings - Glass selection and glazing |
| NZS 4223.Supp1 | Glazing in buildings - Supplement 1 to NZS 4223.1:2008 and NZS 4223.4:2008 |
| NZS 4223.2 | Glazing in buildings - Insulating glass units |
| NZS 4223.3 | Glazing in buildings - Human impact safety requirements |
| NZS 4223.4 | Glazing in buildings - Wind, dead, snow and live action |
| AS/NZS 2208 | Safety glazing materials in buildings |
| AS/NZS 4666 | Insulating glass units |
| BRANZ BU 636 | Protecting Glass From Damage |

### Warranties

1.4 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Warrant glass under normal environmental and use conditions against failure of materials.

| | |
|---|---|
| 10 years: | for insulating glass units |
| 10 years: | for laminated glass |
| 10 years: | for toughened glass |

Refer to the general section for the required form of 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT and details of when completed warranty must be submitted.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Performance

1.5 ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Provide glazing to comply with H1 Energy efficiency requirements of NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 and NZBC H1/VM1-VM2.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 CLEAR FLOAT GLASS

Clear ordinary annealed transparent float glass for general window glazing. Thickness to NZS 4223.1 and NZS 4223. Supp 1.

2.2 TEXTURED, PATTERNED OR OBSCURE GLASS

Translucent, annealed, rolled glass with a decorative pattern on one surface.

2.3 LAMINATED GLASS

Grade A Safety Glass to AS/NZS 2208 with PVB or CIP resin interlayer.

2.4 TOUGHENED GLASS

Grade A Safety Glass to AS/NZS 2208.

Heat soaked toughened glass to NZS 4223.1, Appendix E required for critical areas.
Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.5 REFLECTIVE AND COATED FLOAT GLASS

Either coated float glass incorporating both solar and thermal insulation properties; or coated float glass with only the thermal insulation properties.

2.6 INSULATING GLASS UNITS (IGU'S)

To AS/NZS 4666, NZS 4223.2 and the IGU Manufacturers Association (IGUMA) requirements.

Marking to NZS 4223.2 as modified by NZBC B2/AS1, 3.4.3 Insulating glass units.
Refer to SELECTIONS for specified surfaces of the IGU.
Surface numbering order for glass panes in an IGU are #1, #2, #3, and #4 as follows:
- Surface #1 - outer face of exterior pane
- Surface #2 - cavity face of the exterior pane
- Surface #3 - cavity face of the interior pane
- Surface #4 - outer face of the interior pane

### Materials, mirrors

2.7 MIRROR GLASS

Clear annealed mirror float glass, including silver, activation, passivation and two protective coats.

### Materials, screens

2.8 GLASS SCREENS SHOWER & BATH

Proprietary shower / bath screens, formed to shape before toughening, complete with matching hardware.

### Components, aluminium and uPVC glazing

2.9 GLAZING TAPE AND GASKETS

Single/double sided pressure sensitive self-adhesive low/medium/high density foam tapes/butyl tapes selected to suit the glazing detail to window manufacturers' requirements.

2.10 SETTING BLOCKS

Santoprene/Neoprene, 80-90 Shore A hardness, set at quarter points or to detail, to support the weight of glass panes.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Components, wall mounted glass (mirrors and splashbacks)

2.11 GLASS ADHESIVE

Adhesive mirror-mastic and double-sided adhesive tape.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

To NZS 4223.1, NZS 4223.3, NZS 4223.4. All external glazing to be wind and watertight on completion.

3.2 DELIVERY

Keep glass dry and clean during delivery and bring on to site when ready to glaze directly into place. Comply also with the storage requirements set out in BRANZ BU 636.

3.3 GLASS CONDITION

All glass to have undamaged edges and surfaces.

3.4 GLASS THICKNESS

If not specifically stated in the glazing schedule determine the minimum thickness of glass for each sheet as required by NZS 4223.1, NZS 4223.3, NZS 4223.4 and NZS 4223. Supp 1. For windows tested to NZS 4211, ensure glass meets the requirements of the window testing.

Determine the final glass thickness based on whether wind loading or human impact considerations govern.

3.5 REBATE DIMENSIONS

Provide rebates for glazing to the widths and depths necessary for each situation including minimum glass edge cover to NZS 4223.1, Section 4 Glazing.

3.6 JOINTING, PUTTY AND SEALING MATERIAL COMPATIBILITY

Ensure jointing, putty and sealing materials are compatible with glass substrates. Confirm compatibility with laminated glass, IGUs and coatings.

### Conditions - human impact safety requirements

3.7 SAFETY GLAZING, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Glazing of doors, side panels, low level and window seat glazing, bathrooms, stairwell landings and similar locations, to NZS 4223.3 for thickness and maximum areas of safety glass.

3.8 SAFETY GLAZING MATERIAL

Use only safety glazing materials defined in NZS 4223.3, that also comply with the relevant requirements of AS/NZS 2208. Ensure material is permanently marked and if cut by the distributor or installer mark each piece to NZS 4223.3, 2.8 Identification.

3.9 CONTAINMENT

Edge cover to comply with NZS 4223.1, Section 4 Glazing, table 5. Otherwise to NZS 4223.3, 2.3 Edge cover.

### Assembly

3.10 WORKING OF GLASS

All working of glass as required in NZS 4223.1.

3.11 EDGE WORK AND BEVELLING

Edgework other than a clean cut. Refer to SELECTIONS/drawings for type.

3.12 SURFACE TREATMENT

Refer to SELECTIONS/drawings for finish.

3.13 SURFACE CUTTING

Refer to SELECTIONS/drawings for finish.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.14 INSTALL SAFETY GLASS

To NZS 4223.3.

**Application aluminium**

3.15 INSTALL GLASS TO ALUMINIUM FRAMES

Install glass to NZS4223.1.

- Bead glaze to Section 4 Glazing.
- Channel glaze to Section 4 Glazing, and Section 5 for Framed, Unframed, Partly Framed Glass Assemblies.

**Application - wall mounted glass (mirrors and splashbacks)**

3.16 WALL MOUNTED GLASS, SCREW FIXED

For mirrors and splashbacks, fix with proprietary zinc-plated steel countersunk-head screws, fitted with black neoprene washers with fine-threaded upstands to receive chrome plated dome screw covers.

3.17 WALL MOUNTED GLASS, ADHESIVE FIXED

For mirrors and splashbacks, fix with adhesive mirror-mastic and double-sided adhesive tape. Adhesive area 0.2 m2 per 1 m2 of glass to NZS 4223.3.

**Application miscellaneous**

3.18 INSTALL GLASS BALUSTRADES

Confirm/design and carry out installation to

NZS 4223.3, 22 Barriers (Balustrades, fences, and screens).
NZBC F4/AS1: Safety from falling, 1.0 Barriers in buildings.

3.19 INSTALL GLASS POOL FENCES

Confirm/design and carry out installation to

NZBC F9/AS1 Means of restricting access to residential pools
NZS 4223.3, 22 Barriers (Balustrades, fences, and screens).
NZBC F4/AS1: Safety from falling, 1.0 Barriers in buildings.

3.20 INSTALL GLASS SHOWER & BATH SCREENS

Install shower and bath screens and doors to manufacturer's requirements.

**Finishing**

3.21 SAFETY

Indicate the presence of transparent glass for the remainder of the construction period, with whiting, tape or signs compatible with the glass type.

**Completion**

3.22 TRADE CLEAN

Clean off or remove safety indicators at completion of the building.

3.23 REPLACE

Replace damaged, cracked or marked glass.

3.24 LEAVE

Leave work to the standard required by following procedures.

3.25 REMOVE

Remove debris, unused materials and elements from the site.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4710EI ELIMENT GLASSWOOL THERMAL & ACOUSTIC INSULATION

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to Eliment® Glasswool thermal and acoustic insulation systems including installation for walls, mid-floor and ceiling/roofs.
It includes:

- Eliment® wall insulation - segment
- Eliment® ceiling insulation - segment
- Eliment® skillion insulation - segment

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC for wire netting, wall underlays and roofing underlays

### 1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.
The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| IIC | Impact Insulation Class |
| Rw | Weighted Sound Reduction Index |
| STC | Sound Transmission Class |

**Documents**

### 1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC B2 | Durability |
| NZBC C3 | Affecting areas beyond the fire source |
| NZBC E3 | Internal moisture |
| NZBC F2 | Hazardous building materials |
| NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 | Energy efficiency |
| NZBC H1/VM1-VM2 | Energy efficiency |
| NZBC G6/VM1 | Airborne and impact sound |
| AS/NZS 3000 | Electrical installations (Known as the Australian/New Zealand Wiring Rules) |
| NZS 4246 | Energy efficiency - Installing bulk thermal insulation in residential buildings |
| AS/NZS 4859.1 | Thermal insulation materials for buildings - Part 1: General criteria and technical provisions |
| AS/NZS 60695.11.5 | Fire hazard testing - Test flames - Needle-flame test method - Apparatus, conformity test arrangement and guidance |
| ASTM C411 | Standard test method for hot-surface performance of high-temperature thermal insulation |
| BS 476-4 | Fire tests on building materials and structures - non-combustibility test for materials |
| CodeMark™ CMNZ70114 ver8 | Eliment® Insulation - Glass Mineral Wool Insulation |
| Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 | |

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer and supplier documents relating to this part of the work:
Eliment® Insulation - Ceiling Segment Data Sheet, 1 Feb 2025

Eliment® Insulation - Wall Segment Data Sheet, 10 Feb 2025
Eliment® Ceiling Slab Installation instructions, version SCII6899, 29 September 2023
Eliment® Wall Slab Installation Instructions version SWII6899, 13 September 2023
Eliment® Insulation - Material Safety Data Sheet
Eliment® Insulation - Product Warranty
EMC Technologies, Electrical Safety Fire Test Report M2202023, dated 22 March 2022


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Manufacturer/supplier contact details
Company: Enveloped Solutions Ltd
Web: www.enveloped.co.nz or www.elimentinsulation.co.nz
Email: eliment@enveloped.co.nz
Telephone: 021 387 246

**Warranties**

1.5 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

70 years For Eliment® Glasswool insulation

- Provide this warranty on the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

**Requirements**

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.7 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

**Performance - General**

1.8 R-VALUE RATING

Eliment® Glasswool insulation thermal resistance has been determined in accordance with to AS/NZS 4859.1. Refer to SELECTIONS for R-Value for Eliment Glasswool insulation type and thickness.

1.9 FIRE PROPERTIES

Eliment® Glasswool insulation is non-combustible, with testing in accordance with BS 476-4 and has a maximum service temperature of 450°C when tested in accordance with ASTM C411.

Eliment® Glasswool insulation can withstand a 30s Needle Flame test to AS/NZS 60695.11.

**Compliance Information**

1.10 COMPLIANCE - CODEMARK CERTIFICATE

Eliment® glasswool insulation meets the requirements of the NZBC when used within the conditions and limitations of its CodeMark Certificate of Conformity CMNZ70114.

## 2 PRODUCTS

**Materials**

2.1 ELIMENT® GLASSWOOL INSULATION - WALL SEGMENT

Eliment® Glass wool, a rectangular segment of non-combustible insulation, compliant with AS/NZS 4859.1. Manufactured using up to 80% recycled glass with a new technology, which employs a phenolic resin based binder that incorporates a natural anti-formaldehyde ingredient producing a softer feel glasswool. Refer to SELECTIONS for details.

2.2 ELIMENT® GLASSWOOL INSULATION - CEILING SEGMENT

Eliment® Glass wool, a rectangular segment of non-combustible insulation, compliant with AS/NZS 4859.1. Manufactured using up to 80% recycled glass with a new technology, which employs a phenolic resin based binder that incorporates a natural anti-formaldehyde ingredient producing a softer feel glasswool. Refer to SELECTIONS for details.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 3 EXECUTION

## Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Before commencing installation of Eliment® glasswool insulation, check that the location and framing are free from moisture and will remain dry during installation and the throughout the life of building. Ensure that the cavities are not interconnected and that required wire netting, underlays and vapour barriers are in place.

Ensure all relevant wall and roof underlays are dry, clean, bright, undamaged and free of debris, foils are dry, clean, bright, undamaged and free of debris and vapour barriers form a homogeneous sheet vapour barrier before installing insulation.

Ensure main power is isolated and tagged prior to installation.

3.4 HANDLING

Wear protective clothing as necessary and when handling, avoid delamination or distortion of the rectangular form. Refer to Eliment® Insulation - Material Safety Data Sheet.

3.5 HAZARD & RISK MANAGEMENT

To Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 and take all safety precautions necessary to reduce potential hazards and risks.

## Installation/application

3.6 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.7 PREPARATION

Before installation, gently agitate the insulation by gentle shaking or bouncing to assist recovery to the nominal thickness stated on the product label. Ensure the product is installed dry.

## Installation - Thermal Insulation

3.8 INSTALL THERMAL INSULATION - GENERAL

Lay, install, fit and fix insulation without gaps, tucks, folds and over compaction to NZBC H1/AS1 or AS2 and Eliment® insulation manufacturer's requirements. For all housing and buildings up to 300m install in accordance to NZS 4246 sections 5 Walls, 6 Ceilings & Roofs, 7 Underfloor - Suspended Framed Floors and 10 Concrete Slab-on-Ground Insulation, for residential light timber or steel framed buildings.

Insulate around vents (not over them) to allow unhindered ventilation. Confirm with fireplace manufacturer for clearances; Eliment® insulation is non-combustible and need not be separated except if used in conjunction with, or attached to other heat sensitive materials.

Lift up electrical wires, lighting transformers/controllers and lay the insulation underneath.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.9 FIT WALL THERMAL INSULATION - TIMBER FRAMING

Friction fit insulation between framing members, ensuring a snug fit to all sides avoiding any gaps, tucks and folds. Maintain full thickness of insulation over whole installation. Ensure all areas are insulated including behind electrical outlets, plumbing and services. Use off-cuts to insulate small and hard to fit areas.

For unlined walls or in situations where the wall cavity is deeper than the selected Eliment® insulation, use plastic strapping for insulation support at nominally 300mm centres.

3.10 FIT CEILING / ROOF THERMAL INSULATION - SINGLE LAYER (SEGMENTS BETWEEN CEILING FRAMING)

Friction fit insulation between framing members. Fit securely around all penetrations and leave clearances where required. Leave no gaps and maintain full thickness of insulation over the whole of the installation. Fit insulation over the exterior wall top plate and ensure 25mm air gap to the roof underlay.

**Installation - Acoustic Insulation**

3.11 INSTALLATION ACOUSTIC INSULATION - GENERAL

Lay, install, fit and fix to Eliment® Insulation manufacturer's requirements. Insulate around vents (not over them) to allow unhindered ventilation. Confirm with fireplace manufacturer for clearances; Eliment® insulation is non-combustible and need not be separated except if used in conjunction with, or attached to other heat sensitive materials.

Lift up electrical wires, lighting transformers/controllers and lay the insulation underneath.

3.12 FIT ACOUSTIC INSULATION - TIMBER WALL FRAMING

After the wall lining is fixed to one side of the wall/partition, friction fit insulation segments between framing members, ensuring a snug fit to all sides avoiding any gaps, tucks and folds. Maintain full thickness of acoustic insulation over whole installation. Ensure all areas are insulated including behind electrical outlets, plumbing and services. Use off-cuts to insulate small and hard to fit areas.

For unlined walls or in situations where the wall cavity is deeper than the selected Eliment® insulation, use plastic strapping for insulation support at nominally 300mm centres.

**Installation - General**

3.13 RECESSED LIGHT FITTINGS - RESIDENTIAL

Residential recessed light fittings to AS/NZS 3000, 4.5.2.3.5;

- Existing fittings or retrofit situations, fittings maybe unmarked
- New fittings can only be labelled - CA 80, CA 90, CA 135, IC, IC-F & IC-4

Refer to clause INSULATION CLEARANCES GENERALLY for clearances.

3.14 INSULATION CLEARANCES - GENERAL

Insulation may need to have a gap to some mechanical and electrical services and equipment, including ducts and chimneys. The gaps should be to the NZS 4246 based tables below or to the equipment manufacturer requirements if they require larger gaps. Smaller gaps to manufacturer requirements can be used for equipment specifically manufactured with heat shielding or similar (excludes light fittings). Installed gap not to be more than 50mm bigger than the required gap.

The following tables are subject to:
The requirements of NZS 4246.

- The insulation is exposed to the source of heat or equipment etc.
- Insulation, has passed the needle flame test to AS/NZS 60695.11.5 and/or is non-combustible.
- Gaps to hot surfaces may have to be increased with non-compliant insulation and plastic/polymeric type insulation (EPS, XPS, PIR, etc), check with insulation manufacturer.
- Gaps to hot surfaces may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation, check with equipment manufacturer
- "Secure insulation" if required means, glue, mechanical fix, or provide fixed barriers at gap edge of insulation to hold in place. Rigid or semi rigid insulation may only need a firm friction fit (secure loose pieces).


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- Loose fill insulation will require fixed barriers to NZS 4246 to maintain gaps.

LIGHT FITTINGS

| Type of fitting | Minimum insulation clearance | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| Recessed, marked NON-IC, or unmarked | 100mm (increase if over 100W) | NON-IC fittings and new or old unmarked & unknown fittings, and/or insulation. Secure insulation. |
| Recessed, CA 80, CA 90 or CA 135 | Abut fittings | Do NOT cover the fittings. |
| Recessed, IC, IC-F or IC-4 | Abut & cover fittings | Ensure insulation complies. |
| Recessed, marked Do-Not-Cover | Manufacturers clearances | Do not cover the fittings. |
| Independent control gear | Place on top of insulation & 50mm from fitting | If not on top allow 50mm clearance to insulation, do not cover. Includes, transformers, ballasts & drivers etc. |
| Surface fittings not exposed to insulation | Nil | Where surface fittings are isolated from insulation by appropriate linings. Excludes high heat fittings. |
| Surface fittings & exposed insulation | 200mm | This is exposed insulation to any part of the exposed fitting & bulb/tube (e.g. exposed light in an unlined basement). Secure insulation. |

INBUILT RECESSED HOT APPLIANCES

| Appliance | Minimum insulation clearance | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| Electrical heaters | 100mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation. Secure insulation. |
| Gas appliance exposed flame | 200mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation or with specific details from the appliance manufacturer. Excludes uncommon appliances, refer NZS 4246. |
| Gas appliance flues | 75mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation. Secure insulation. Excludes uncommon appliances refer NZS 4246. |
| Oil-fired appliances and flues | 230mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation or with specific details from the appliance manufacturer. Secure insulation. |
| Open fireplace opening | 200mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation. Secure insulation. |
| Brick masonry chimneys | 50mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation. Secure insulation. |
| Metal chimneys & flues | 75mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation or with specific details from the appliance manufacturer. Secure insulation. |
| Solid fuel appliance | 600mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation or with specific details from the appliance manufacturer. Secure insulation. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Solid fuel appliance flue | 600mm | Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation or with specific details from the appliance manufacturer. Secure insulation. |

EXTRACTS, VENTS, PIPES & ROOF UNDERLAY

| **Application** | **Minimum insulation clearance** | **Comments** |
|---|---|---|
| Ducted fan motors | 50mm | Includes ducted rangehoods, extractors etc. Applies to the motor unit and electrical enclosures (not the ducts) |
| Ducted fan ducts | Abut | Excludes motor unit and electrical enclosures. |
| Unducted fan motors usually discharging to ceiling space | 200mm | Includes unducted, rangehoods, extractors etc, discharging into roof space. To prevent debris falling into motor.<br>Clearance may be able to be reduced, by providing a fixed barrier around the vent. |
| Passive vents (still in use) | 200mm | To prevent debris falling through. Clearance may be able to be reduced, with more cohesive insulation, like some of the rigid plastic types or providing a fixed barrier around the vent. |
| Plumbing penetrations through floors | 100mm | Keep gap between pipe penetration and floor insulation in case of leaks. |
| Roofing material/underlay | 25mm | From underside of roofing or flexible roofing underlay, to prevent wicking |

**Completion & Commissioning**

3.15 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.

Complete a final check of installation ensuring all areas have been insulated and that the insulation is in an even and consistent layer





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 4710P PINK® BATTS® THERMAL & ACOUSTIC INSULATION

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to Comfortech Building Performance Solutions® Pink® Batts® thermal and acoustic insulation materials for walls, floors, ceilings and roofs.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC for wire netting, wall underlays and roofing underlays.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| BIB | Building Insulation Blanket |
| IIC | Impact Insulation Class |
| STC | Sound Transmission Class |

**Documents**

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC G6/VM1 | Airborne and impact sound |
| NZS/AS 1530.1 | Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures - Combustibility test for materials |
| AS/NZS 3000 | Electrical installations (Known as the Australian/ New Zealand Wiring Rules) |
| NZS 4246 | Energy efficiency - Installing bulk thermal insulation in residential buildings |
| AS/NZS 4859.1 | Thermal insulation materials for buildings - General criteria and technical provisions |
| AS/NZS 60695.11.5 | Fire hazard testing - Test flames - Needle-flame test method - Apparatus, conformity test arrangement and guidance |

1.4 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer and supplier documents related to this section are:

Comfortech H1 Overview
Comfortech Pink® Batts® Insulation - Safety Data Sheet
Comfortech Pink® Batts® Thermal Solutions - Product Guide (May 2025)
Comfortech Pink® Batts® Ceiling Product & Insulation Guide (June 2025)
Comfortech Pink® Batts® Skillion Roof Insulation Product & Installation Guide (Jan 2025)
Comfortech Pink® Batts® Wall Insulation Product & Installation Guide (Jan 2025)
Comfortech Pink® Batts® SnugFloor® Insulation Product & Installation Guide (Jan 2025)
Comfortech Pink® Batts® BIB Product & Installation Guide (July 2025)
Comfortech Pink® Superbatts® Thermal Solutions - Installation Guide (Jan 2025)
Comfortech Pink® Batts® Silencer® Acoustic Installation Instructions
Comfortech Pink® Batts® Silencer® Wall & Midfloor Data Sheet
Comfortech Pink® Batts® Insulation Product Warranty
BRANZ Appraisal 238 (2023) - Pink® Batts® Insulation - Amended 23 February 2026
BRANZ Appraisal 632 (2023) - Pink® Batts® SnugFloor® Insulation - Amended 12 August 2024
BRANZ Appraisal 767 (2023) - Pink® Batts® Skillion Roof Insulation - Amended 21 January 2026

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | Tasman Insulation NZ Ltd |
| Trading as: | Comfortech Building Performance Solutions® |
| Web: | www.pinkbatts.co.nz |
| Telephone: | 0800 746 522 |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Warranties

1.5 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 50 years | For Pink® Batts® insulation products |

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer/ supplier standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

1.6 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 year | For installation |

- Provide this warranty on the installer/applicator standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.8 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

### Compliance information

1.9 COMPLIANCE - BRANZ APPRAISAL 632

Pink® Batts® SnugFloor® Insulation has been appraised as meeting provisions of the NZBC when used within the Conditions and Limitations of its BRANZ Appraisal 632.

### Performance

1.10 FIRE PROPERTIES - NON COMBUSTIBLE

Pink® Batts® insulation products are classified as non-combustible when tested to NZS/AS 1530.1 and achieve a Group Number of 1-S.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials - thermal insulation

2.1 PINK® BATTS® THERMAL INSULATION BATTS

Bio-soluble fibrous glass wool slabs manufactured from minimum 80% recycled window glass and bonded with thermosetting resin to AS/NZS 4859.1. Coloured Pink for identification. Available in a range of R-values, sizes and thicknesses. Refer to SELECTIONS.

### Components

2.2 WIRE NETTING

Refer to 4161 UNDERLAYS, FOIL AND DPC for wire netting used to support the insulation.

2.3 PLASTIC STRAPPING TAPES

Proprietary plastic strapping tape.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 3 EXECUTION

## Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

## Installation - general

3.4 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.5 INSTALL INSULATION - GENERALLY

Install insulation in a dry protected environment. Lay, fit and fix insulation without gaps, tucks, folds and over compaction to Pink® Batts® installation requirements and to NZS 4246 for all housing and buildings up to 300m². Allow insulation to re-loft/relax prior to installation. Do not cover vents. Lift up electrical wires, lighting transformers/controllers and lay the insulation underneath. Use insulation offcuts to fill small gaps between framing.

3.6 INSULATION CLEARANCES

Provide insulation clearances to NZS 4246 and for recessed luminaires AS/NZS 3000, 4.5.2.3. Where allowed by these standards provide insulation clearances to product manufacturer's stated clearances. Secure insulation in place so clearances are maintained and use guards/barriers , if required, where insulation is not secured.

3.7 LAY WIRE NETTING - UNDER JOISTS / PURLINS

Lay at right angles across the rafters/roof joists (under purlins). Pull tight and fix.

3.8 LAY PLASTIC STRAPPING TAPE

Lay at right angles across the framing at a minimum of 300mm centres, staple tape to each framing member with stainless steel staples.

3.9 PREPARATION INSULATION

Before installation, gently agitate the insulation by shaking or bouncing to assist recovery to the nominal thickness stated on the product label. Maintain the insulation in a dry state.

3.10 CUTTING INSULATION TO SIZE

Tear insulation by hand or cut with an insulation saw/knife, sharp scissors, or with sharp wide-blade knife. Cut slightly oversized for snug friction fit.

## Installation - thermal insulation

3.11 INSTALL PINK® BATTS® SNUGFLOOR® INSULATION

Friction fit insulation slabs between framing. Slabs to be 30mm wider than the distance between joist faces. Friction fit each piece between the joists. Fold on one side. Do not cover over wiring with insulation. Cut neatly around penetrations. Secure each slab with minimum 2 straps stapled to inside face of joist. Use two staples for each fixing point. Fold must not extend below bottom joist, trim if required.

## Completion

3.12 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 5113 PLASTERBOARD LININGS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply, fixing and jointing of gypsum plasterboard sheets and accessories to timber and steel framed walls and ceilings to form:

- standard systems
- superior finish quality systems
- wet area systems
- bracing systems
- minor related fire rating
- minor related sound rating

1.1 ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are used throughout this part of the specification:

| | |
|---|---|
| AWCINZ | Association of Wall and Ceiling Industries New Zealand |

### Documents

1.2 DOCUMENTS REFERRED TO

Documents referred to in this section are:

| | |
|---|---|
| BPS | Building Product Specifications |
| NZBC C/AS2 | Protection from fire for buildings other than risk group SH |
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| AS 1397 | Continuous hot-dip metallic coated steel sheet and strip - Coatings of zinc and zinc alloyed with aluminium and magnesium |
| AS/NZS 2588 | Gypsum plasterboard |
| AS/NZS 2589 | Gypsum linings - Application and finishing |
| NZS 3602 | Timber and wood based products for use in building |
| NZS 3603 | Timber structures standard |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| AS/NZS 4600:2005 | Cold-formed steel structures |
| ASTM C630/C630M-96a | Water-resistant gypsum backing board |
| BRANZ Technical Paper P21 | Technical Paper P21: A wall bracing test and evaluation procedure (2010) |
| NASH Standard Part 2: Light steel framed buildings | |

Documents listed above and cited in the clauses that follow are part of this specification. However, this specification takes precedence in the event of it being at variance with the cited document.

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's documents relating to work in this section are:

GIB Site Guide

Copies of the above literature are available from

| | |
|---|---|
| Web: | www.gib.co.nz/site-guide-and-install |

### Requirements

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications. Plasterboard fixers and stoppers to be experienced competent workers, familiar with materials and techniques specified. Submit evidence of experience on request. For example:

- National Certificate of Interior Systems; or
- Certified Business member of AWCINZ.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Performance

1.5 INSPECTIONS AND ACCEPTANCE

Inspect the finished surface of the installed plasterboard:

- before applying sealer and
- before applying finish coatings or decorative papers,

so that after assessment of the type and/or angle of illumination and its effect on the completed decorative treatment, group approval and acceptance of the surface can be given.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 GYPSUM PLASTERBOARD

Gypsum plaster core encased in a durable face and backing paper formed for standard use to AS/NZS 2588.

2.2 GYPSUM PLASTERBOARD, HIGH FINISH SYSTEMS

Gypsum plaster core encased in a special fine surface durable face and backing paper formed for standard and fire rated use to AS/NZS 2588.

2.3 GYPSUM PLASTERBOARD, WATER RESISTANT SYSTEMS

Gypsum plaster core containing a wax emulsion encased in a durable face and backing paper formed for standard and fire rated use to AS/NZS 2588 and for water resistance use to ASTM C630/C630M-96a.

2.4 CORNICE

Plasterboard, scotia pattern.

### Components

2.5 CEILING BATTENS, METAL

0.55mm galvanized steel (275 g/m² zinc coating) battens and matching perimeter channels.

2.6 SCREWS, TIMBER FRAME

10mm plasterboard: Type S gypsum screws 25mm x 6 gauge
13mm plasterboard: Type S gypsum screws 32mm x 6 gauge

Screws for fire rated and sound rated systems as required by the sheet manufacturer's approved specification.

2.7 NAILS, TIMBER FRAME

10mm plasterboard: 30mm x 2.5mm galvanized drywall clouts
13mm plasterboard: 40mm x 2.5mm galvanized drywall clouts

Nails for fire rated and sound rated systems as required by the sheet manufacturer's approved specification.
Nails for perimeter nailing for bracing systems complete with 15mm galvanized steel washers as required by the sheet manufacturer's approved specification.

2.8 SCREWS, STEEL FRAME / BATTENS

10mm plasterboard: Type S gypsum screws 25mm x 6 gauge
13mm plasterboard: Type S gypsum screws 32mm x 6 gauge

Screws for fire rated and sound rated systems as required by the sheet manufacturer's approved specification.

2.9 SECTIONS AND TRIM MATERIAL

Form from galvanized steel of a coating class not less than ZM275 to AS 1397 and fix with 30mm x 2.5mm galvanized clouts.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.10 EXTERNAL ANGLE
Perforated.

2.11 INTERNAL REINFORCING ANGLE
Perforated.

2.12 CONTROL JOINT
With plastic protective tape.

2.13 CASING BEAD
To suit sheet thickness.

2.14 J MOULD
Extruded uPVC dimensioned to suit the sheet thickness and fixed with 25mm x 1.6mm nickel panel pins.

2.15 TAPE ON EDGE TRIMS
Tape-on paper tape and galvanized steel trims and edges.

2.16 EDGE PROFILES
Pre-formed aluminium profiles, with perforated edge trims.

**Accessories**

2.17 ADHESIVE
Multi-purpose water based wallboard adhesive.

2.18 JOINTING COMPOUNDS
System match bedding compound and finishing compound. Refer to the sheet manufacturer's literature and follow their requirements on which compounds to use with which accessory and in which location, to achieve the required level of finish.

2.19 JOINTING TAPE
System match reinforcing tape.

**Finishes**

2.20 SKIMCOAT PLASTER
Proprietary spray-on surface finish.

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions**

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS
Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS
Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work. Do not commence work until the substrate is plumb, level and to the standard required by AS/NZS 2589 and the sheet manufacturer's requirements.

Do not begin installation until the building is closed in, fully glazed, the roof watertight and the atmospheric conditions within the plasterboard manufacturer guidelines.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.4 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS - TIMBER FRAMING

Ensure that the timber framing to which plasterboard lining is fixed, shall comply with NZS 3602, NZS 3603 & NZS 3604. Where adhesion of gypsum linings is required, surfaces shall be free of oil, grease, dust and other foreign materials.

Maximum allowable moisture content to AS/NZS 2589 for timber framing at lining: 18% or less for plasterboard linings. Refer to NZBC E2/AS1, 10.0 Construction Moisture.

3.5 LEVELS OF PLASTERBOARD FINISH

Provide the selected plasterboard surfaces to the pre decorative levels of finish specified in AS/NZS 2589.

3.6 CONFIRM LEVELS OF PLASTERBOARD FINISH ACCEPTANCE

Before commencing work, agree in writing upon the surface finish assessment procedure towards ensuring that the quality of finish expectations are reasonable and are subsequently obtained and acceptable.

Do not apply decorative treatment until it is agreed in writing by the contractor, subcontractors and decorator that the specified plasterboard Level of Finish has been achieved.

"Levels of plasterboard finish" is a tool for specifying the required quality of finish when installing and flush stopping plasterboard prior to the application of a range of decorative finishes under various lighting conditions. Refer to AS/NZS 2589.

3.7 PROTECTION

Protect surfaces, cabinetwork, fittings, equipment and finishes already in place from the possibility of water staining and stopping damage.

3.8 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Leave a 10mm gap at floor level. Do not break the face paper. Position sheets to a "touch fit" with no forcing or springing into place. Run sheets over doors and under and over window openings. Apply adhesive in daubs 25mm diameter and 10mm thick. Do not place daubs at sheet perimeters or under nail and screw fixings.

**Application - general**

3.9 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.10 INSTALL CEILING BATTENS

Install in accordance with the batten manufacturer's requirements.

3.11 LINE CEILINGS AND WALLS

Line ceilings and walls with the various sheets and fix to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements, using tapered edge joints as far as possible.

3.12 BOARD ORIENTATION

Minimise joints by careful sheet layout using the largest sheet sizes possible, and generally fixing horizontally. Where part sheets are required for various stud heights they should be positioned so the cut sheet is as low as possible to keep joints below eye level.

3.13 END BUTT JOINTS

When end butt joints are unavoidable, locate staggered off the framing, back block, fix and stop to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements.

**Application - wet area systems**

3.14 LINE WET AREA WALLS

Line walls in accordance with the sheet manufacturer's requirements.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Application - finishing sections and trim**

3.15 FIX EXTERNAL ANGLE

Fix full length to external corners with clouts at 100mm centres each side staggered to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements.

3.16 FIX INTERNAL REINFORCING ANGLE

Fix full length to internal corners with clouts at 100mm centres each side staggered to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements.

3.17 FIX CASING BEAD

Fix between dissimilar materials and caulk with sound rated sealant to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements.

3.18 FIX J MOULD

Fix between dissimilar materials and caulk with sound rated sealant to the drawings supplied.

3.19 FORM CONTROL JOINTS

Provide at maximum 9 metre centres in long unbroken walls and 12 metre centres to ceilings to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements. Fix control joint section into joint by staples at 150mm both sides. Fill gap in voids with sound rated sealant. Remove plastic tape after stopping.

3.20 FIX COVER MOULDS

Fix to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements and to the drawings supplied.

3.21 FIX CORNICE

Fix with adhesive required by the sheet manufacturer and joints mitred to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements

3.22 FORM SQUARE STOPPED CORNERS

Form taped reinforced square stopped ceiling-to-wall angles to the sheet manufacturer's requirements.

3.23 INSTALL TAPE-ON TRIMS

Install in accordance with the trim manufacturer's requirements.

3.24 INSTALL SPECIAL EDGES AND BANDS

Install in accordance with the edging manufacturer's requirements.

**Finishing - stopping**

3.25 FORM JOINTS

Fill recess with bedding compound, centre the reinforcing tape, apply a second coat of bedding compound followed by a coat of finishing compound. Allow to dry and lightly sand off, to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements.

3.26 STOPPING NAILS AND SCREWS

Apply two successive coats of bedding compound and a coat of finishing compound to the sheet manufacturer's requirements.

3.27 SQUARE STOPPED CORNERS

Fill with bedding compound, centre reinforcing tape into internal angle and apply a coat of finishing compound and complete to the sheet manufacturer's details and requirements.

3.28 EXTERNAL ANGLES

Apply two coats of bedding compound followed by a coat of finishing compound to the sheet manufacturer's requirements.

3.29 END BUTT JOINTS

Fill, tape and coat as for tapered edge joints except that each stage is doubled in width.

3.30 APPLYING SKIMCOAT PLASTER

Apply spray-on surface finish in accordance with the sheet manufacturer's requirements.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## Completion & Commissioning

3.31 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 5171RI RCS INTEGRA LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE INTERTENANCY SYSTEM

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of Resene Construction Systems INTEGRA Central Barrier Intertenancy System.

It includes:

- Integra Aerated Autoclaved Concrete (AAC) panels
- Adhesive plaster
- Aluminium brackets
- Components and accessories to complete the installation

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 3820 CARPENTRY for timber framing.

Refer to 5113 PLASTERBOARD LININGS for internal linings to wall framing either side.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| AAC | Autoclaved aerated concrete |
| FRR | Fire Resistance Rating |
| STC | Sound transmission class |
| Rw | Sound Reduction Index |

### Documents

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| AS 1530.4 | Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structure - Fire-resistance tests for elements of construction |
| ISO 10140-2:2010 | Acoustics - Laboratory measurement of sound insulation of building elements - Measurement of airborne sound insulation |

1.4 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's documents related to this section are:

BRANZ Appraisal 1064 (2025) - Integra Central Barrier Intertenancy System
Integra Central Barrier Intertenancy System Technical Manual, Version 3 - February 2025
Integra Lightweight Concrete Intertenancy System, Timber Frame drawing register 34.00.00, 6 June 2025
Integra Lightweight Concrete Intertenancy System, Steel Frame drawing register 33.00.00, 21 May 2025
Resene Construction Systems Trade Spec™
Resene Construction Systems Project Guide

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | Resene Construction Systems |
| Web: | www.reseneconstruction.co.nz |
| Email: | help@reseneconstruction.co.nz |
| Telephone: | 0800 50 70 40 |

### Warranties

1.5 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| 10 years | For INTEGRA Central Barrier Intertenancy System components supplied by Resene Construction Systems |

- Provide this warranty on the Resene Construction Systems standard form (if unavailable, use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of Practical Completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

**Requirements**

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.7 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

1.8 ACCEPTABLE PRODUCT/MATERIAL SUPPLIERS

Where a product or material supplier is named in SELECTIONS, the product/material must be provided by the named supplier. Where more than one named supplier, any one of the named suppliers will be acceptable.

**Compliance Information**

1.9 COMPLIANCE - BRANZ APPRAISAL

The INTEGRA Central Barrier Intertenancy System has been appraised as meeting provisions of the NZBC when used within the Conditions and Limitations of its BRANZ Appraisal 1064.

**Performance**

1.10 SOUND RATING

The INTEGRA Central Barrier Intertenancy System has been tested to ISO 10140-2. Refer to SELECTIONS.

1.11 FIRE RATING

The INTEGRA Central Barrier Intertenancy System has been tested to AS 1530.4 and achieve FRR of 120/120/120.

## 2 PRODUCTS

**Materials**

2.1 INTEGRA AAC 50MM PANEL

50mm thick fibre-reinforced aerated concrete, 2200mm x 600mm panel.

2.2 PLASTERBOARD

Refer to relevant plasterboard section.

2.3 TIMBER FRAMING

Refer to relevant timber framing section.

**Components**

2.4 FIXINGS - TIMBER FRAMING

Resene Construction Systems 12g x 45mm and 75mm Galvanised screws with EPDM washer.

2.5 INTERTENANCY BRACKETS

Aluminium brackets, 50mm wide x 3mm thick with 75mm x 50mm legs and a sound & heat resistant dampener.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.6 PSL AAC ADHESIVE

Plaster used for bonding AAC panels together, patching panels, and securing the panel to a concrete foundation. Supplied in 20kg bags.

2.7 FIRE RESISTANT MINERAL WOOL PACKING

Resene Construction Systems FireWool™, fire resistant mineral wool.

2.8 INSULATION

Refer to relevant insulation section.

**Accessories**

2.9 ANTI-CORROSION COATING

Resene Galvo-Prime; brush-applied waterborne galvanised iron primer or Zinc-rich spray primer; solvent borne spray application.

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions**

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Timber framing: 18% maximum moisture content

**Installation - Generally**

3.4 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.5 INSTALLATION GENERALLY

Install in accordance with Integra Central Barrier Intertenancy System Technical Manual.

3.6 SERVICES

Conceal services within the timber framed section of the wall system, subject to the following constraints:

- A minimum of 10mm clearance to be maintained between any penetrations and the central barrier
- Penetrations to be no larger than 65mm diameter or 90mm x 50mm through the plasterboard lining
- No more than two penetrations per 600mm bay of framing to be made.

3.7 CUT PANELS

Cut panels using a circular saw with diamond tipped blade. Prime any exposed reinforcing steel using Resene Galvo-Prime, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.8 SETOUT INTEGRA PANELS

Setout INTEGRA panels prior to commencing installation. With panels oriented horizontally, setout in stacker bond or stretcher bond pattern.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Installation

3.9 FIT INTERTENANCY BRACKETS TO TIMBER WALL FRAMING

Following erection of framing to first side of the intertenancy wall install 2 Intertenancy Brackets per INTEGRA panel. Commencing from one end of the wall, position and screw fix first row of Intertenancy Brackets to every second stud using 12g x 45mm Galvanised screws with EPDM washer, brackets 300mm from finished floor level with face of bracket dampener set off the framing to the required cavity depth. Continue with subsequent rows of brackets at 600mm vertical centres.

3.10 INSTALL INTEGRA PANELS

With panel oriented horizontally, apply AAC adhesive to underside of first panel using a spatula or broadknife. Lift and position panel against Intertenancy Brackets plumb and true to line. Drill 2mm - 3mm pilot hole through INTEGRA panel at each bracket and screw fix through panel into bracket with 12g x 75mm Galvanised screw with EPDM washer. Continue with next panels in the first row and subsequent rows above, applying AAC adhesive to underside and side faces of each adjoining panel and screw fixing to Intertenancy Brackets. Finish top row of panels as close to top plate as possible.

3.11 FIT INTERTENANCY BRACKETS TO SECOND SIDE WALL FRAMING

Following erection of second side of wall framing to enclose the INTEGRA panels, setout and fix Intertenancy Brackets staggered from brackets on the opposing side.

3.12 FIT FIREWOOL

Fill voids between INTEGRA panels and roofing underlay/sheathing with FireWool.

3.13 FIT WALL INSULATION

Refer to relevant insulation section.

3.14 INSTALL PLASTERBOARD WALL LININGS

Refer to relevant plasterboard section.

### Completion & Commissioning

3.15 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.

## 4 SELECTIONS

For further details on selections go to www.reseneconstruction.co.nz.
Substitutions are not permitted to the following Resene Construction Systemsmaterials or components, unless stated otherwise.

### RCS INTEGRA Central Barrier Intertenancy System - Timber framing

4.1 RCS INTEGRA CENTRAL BARRIER INTERTENANCY SYSTEM - INTA120a

| | |
|---|---|
| Location: | between lots 33 and 34, centred on boundary line |
| Type/brand: | Resene Construction Systems INTEGRA Central Barrier Intertenancy System |
| System: | INTA120a |
| FFR: | 120/120/120 |
| STC: | 64 |
| Rw: | 62 |
| Cavity depth: | 20mm |
| Framing: | Timber |
| Lining: | 1 layer 10mm standard plasterboard each side |
| Insulation: | R1.8 min and 75mm thick min. Refer to insulation selection. |

# 5430 WOOD BASED SHEET FLOORS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and fixing of sheet based floors over timber framing.
It includes:

- Particleboard sheet as a floor
- Plywood sheet as a floor

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 2310 FOUNDATIONS for midfloor framing

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| FSC | Forest Stewardship Council |
| PEFC | Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification |

### Documents

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| BPS | Building Product Specifications |
| AS/NZS 1604.1 | Preservative-treated wood-based products - Part 1: Products and treatment |
| AS/NZS 1860.1 | Particleboard flooring - Specifications |
| AS/NZS 2269.0 | Plywood - structural - specifications |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |

### Requirements

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Workers to be experienced, competent trades people familiar with the materials and techniques specified.

1.5 SURFACE FIRE PERFORMANCE - UNFINISHED FLOORING

Unfinished wood based sheet flooring has a critical radiant flux 2.2kW/m2 as defined by BPS, Table 8.1.2.1: Generic critical radiant flux values for some substrate and coating combinations.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Particleboard

2.1 PARTICLEBOARD FLOORS

To AS/NZS 1860.1.

2.2 NAILS - PARTICLEBOARD

Hand-driven nails:

- 60 x 2.8mm hot-dipped galvanized jolt head nails or 60 x 3.15mm hot-dipped galvanized csk annular grooved flooring nails.

Power-driven nails:

- 65 x 2.87mm hot-dipped galvanized annular grooved flooring nails.

Jolt head nails must be used where particle board is to be exposed (clear finished).


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.3 SCREWS - PARTICLEBOARD

Sure-fast type countersunk 50mm x 8 gauge, minimum length 50mm, minimum class3 or stainless steel.

2.4 ADHESIVE - PARTICLEBOARD

One-component polyurethane based construction adhesive or elastomeric construction adhesive, to Floor Manufacturer's requirements.

**Plywood**

2.5 PLYWOOD FLOORS

Radiata pine veneer ply to AS/NZS 2269.0, face sanded, grade as scheduled. H3 CCA treated to AS/NZS 1604.1, when used as a wet area substrate. Confirm compatibility with adhesives being used with the waterproofing membrane. F11 grade to be used for flooring.

2.6 NAILS - PLYWOOD

Refer to the plywood manufacturer requirements for size and use.

| | |
|---|---|
| 15mm ply: | 50mm x 2.8mm galvanized annular grooved flooring nails |
| 17 - 21mm ply: | 60mm x 2.8mm galvanized annular grooved flooring nails |
| 25mm ply: | 75mm x 3.15mm galvanized annular grooved flooring nails |

Jolt head nails to be used for exposed (clear finished) plywood.

2.7 ADHESIVE - PLYWOOD

One-component polyurethane based construction adhesive to Floor Manufacturer requirements.

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions**

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 SUBSTRATE

Do not commence work until the framing is plumb and level, in true alignment and to suit the floor manufacturer's requirements.

Ensure framing suits the required laying pattern.

3.4 SUPPORT EDGES AND JOINTS

Fully support edges and joints on square edges of sheets. T&G edged sheet joints are not fully supported unless shown otherwise.

3.5 FLOOR DIAPHRAGMS

Install floor diaphragms in accordance with NZS 3604, 7.3 **Structural floor diaphragms** and floor manufacturer requirements. Support all edges of sheets.

3.6 EXPANSION JOINTS - LARGER FLOORS

Lay flooring to allow for a large expansion gap for large floor areas to manufacturer requirements. Locate as shown, under internal walls where possible.

**Installation - Particleboard**

3.7 LAYING OVER FOIL

Lay flooring over foil to manufacturer's requirements. Cut 25mm square holes in foil over joists at a minimum of 300mm centres. Apply adhesive to exposed joist before laying sheets.

Do not use in existing residential buildings.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.8 ADHESIVE FASTENING

Use adhesive fastening to joists in conjunction with mechanical fixing, using the adhesive required by the flooring manufacturer. Apply adhesive to all floor joists, square edge butt joints and grooved edge butt joints, in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements.

3.9 LAYING PARTICLEBOARD FLOOR

Lay and fasten to the floor manufacturer's requirements and NZS 3604, section 7.2.3, **Wood-based sheet flooring**.

Lay sheets in a staggered layout, close butt edges of sheets. Do not cramp sheets. Fixings minimum 10mm, maximum 15mm from the edge, 150mm centres along edges and 200mm centres on intermediate supports. Finish all fixings flush with surface at time of fixing. Tighten fixings; punch nails and tighten screws just prior to sanding.
Programme work for minimal exposure to weather. Do not allow water to pond on the floor surface. Clean surface of flooring daily to remove sawdust and shavings, when exposed to the weather.

3.10 FINISHING

Refer to the flooring manufacturer requirements regarding timing of nail punching and general sanding procedures. Lightly sand for floor coverings and fill holes and 3-cut sand for clear finish. Hand sand into corners.

**Installation - Plywood**

3.11 ADHESIVE FIXING

Apply a 10mm adhesive bead to joists.

3.12 FIXING PLYWOOD SHEETS

Lay and fasten to the floor manufacturer requirements and NZS 3604, section 7.2.3, **Wood-based sheet flooring**. Lay sheets in a staggered layout, face-grain of sheet at right-angles to support and with sheets in square, true alignment and plane. Do not cramp sheets. Fixings minimum 10mm, maximum 15mm from the edge, 150mm centres along edges and 300mm centres on intermediate supports.

Do not allow water to pond on the floor surface. Clean surface of flooring daily to remove sawdust and shavings. Protect work from the weather until it is covered, coated or sealed.

**Completion & Commissioning**

3.13 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 4 SELECTIONS

### 4.1 PARTICLEBOARD FLOORING

| | |
|---|---|
| Manufacturer: | tbc |
| Brand/grade: | tbc |
| Thickness: | 20mm |
| Edge detail: | square |
| Fixing type/finish: | nail and adhesive |
| Floor finish: | covered |

### 4.2 PLYWOOD - FLOORING (DIAPHRAGM)

| | |
|---|---|
| Location: | refer to arch plans and engineer plans for diaphragm floors (and wet area floors requiring ply substrate) |
| Manufacturer: | ECOPLY |
| Brand/grade: | tbc |
| Edge detail: | square |
| Stress grade: | F11 |
| Thickness: | 19mm |
| Ply treatment: | H3.1 (H3.2 CCA in wet areas) |
| Fixing type/finish: | refer to structural engineer's design |
| Fixing size: | refer to structural engineer's design |

### 4.3 CONSTRUCTION METHOD

| | |
|---|---|
| Method: | Platform method - sheet edge to perimeter of building with all wall plates on top of sheet. |

### 4.4 DIAPHRAGM CONSTRUCTION METHOD

| | |
|---|---|
| Method: | 1200mm wide sheets with all edges supported, nail or nail plus adhesive fixed, sheet edge to perimeter of building with all wall plates on top of sheet. |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 6122A ARDEX FLOOR SUBSTRATE PREPARATION

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to preparing for and carrying out floor levelling work over a range of substrates, prior to the installation of floor coverings.

### Documents

1.1 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZS AS 1884 | Floor coverings - Resilient sheet and tiles - Installation practices |
| NZS 3114 | Specification for concrete surface finishes |

Documents listed above and cited in the clauses that follow are part of this specification. However, this specification takes precedence in the event of it being at variance with the cited document.

1.2 MANUFACTURER'S DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's documents relating to work in this section are:

ARDEX floor levelling compounds manual

Copies of the above literature are available from ARDEX:

| | |
|---|---|
| Web: | www.ardexnz.com |
| Email: | info@ardexnz.com |
| Telephone: | 0800 2 ARDEX (27339) |

### Warranties

1.3 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Warrant this work under normal environmental and use conditions against failure of materials.

| | |
|---|---|
| Warranty period: | 10 years |
| Form of warranty: | ARDEX standard form |

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for details of when completed warranties must be submitted.

### Requirements

1.4 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any specified ARDEX materials, or associated products.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Applicators to be experienced in the application of floor levelling compounds. Application to be strictly in accordance with ARDEX technical literature.

1.6 SYSTEMS ARDEX PROJECT

Contact ARDEX with any relevant key dates and for a list of approved applicators. The contractor is to contact ARDEX prior to starting the contract.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials -Primers and Admixes

2.1 ARDEX P 51 PRIMER

P 51 is a water-based primer, precoat, bonding agent and pore closer for concrete substrates. As a pore closer Ardex P51 prevents air bubbles rising from substrates and creating defects in the underlays.

2.2 ARDEX E 25 RESILIENT EMULSION / MORTAR ADMIX

Synthetic resin admixture. Ardex E 25 is a liquid admixture designed to enhance tensile strength, improve surface toughness, and increase flexibility of selected Ardex mortars and floor levelling compounds.

### Materials - Levelling Compound

2.3 ARDEX K 15 MICROTEC COMMERCIAL LEVELLING COMPOUND

Ardex K 15 Microtec is extremely versatile and is suitable for a wide range of substrates. Ardex K 15 Microtec is able to receive virtually any floor covering in 16 to 18 hours. Dry internal use only.

2.4 ARDITEX K 60 FLEXIBLE LEVELLING COMPOUND

ARDITEX K 60 is formulated with excellent adhesion designed to work under a damp proof membrane. Also used to pre-level existing timber floors prior to the installation of sheeting for a stable base for new floor coverings. Internal and external applications.

2.5 ARDEX K 65 LEVELLING COMPOUND

ARDEX K 65 is a single part reinforced smoothing and levelling compound for timber floors.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 COMPLY

Comply with all Ardex requirements and instructions.

3.2 STORE

Store materials under conditions that ensure no deterioration or damage.

3.3 CHECK SUBSTRATE

Check that the substrate will allow work of the required standard. Complete any remedial work identified before commencing any floor levelling work.

### Application - substrate preparation

3.4 PREPARATION - GENERAL

Ensure that all surfaces are sound, clean and free of oil, grease, wax dirt, asphalt, curing compounds, latex and gypsum compounds, dust, paint, or any contaminants which might act as a bond breaker. Carry out moisture test and PH test in accordance with NZS AS 1884. Refer to the Ardex floor levelling compounds manual for specific and detailed instructions for various substrates and their condition.

3.5 PREPARE TIMBER SUBSTRATE

Sand, using a course abrasive, to remove all foreign matter and any existing protective coatings to provide a clean, mechanical surface. Vacuum all dust and debris. Do not use solvents, strippers, or cleaners to remove contamination.

### Application - general

3.6 PRIMING

Prepare for and apply Ardex primer strictly in accordance with Ardex's requirements and instructions.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.7 FLOOR LEVELLING

Prepare materials and carry out floor levelling strictly in accordance with Ardex requirements and instructions.

**Completion**

3.8 REMOVE

Remove all debris, unused materials and elements from the site.

3.9 PROTECT

Protect completed work from damage for the period between completion of the floor levelling work and completion of flooring.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 6211 WALL TILING SYSTEMS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of interior and exterior wall tiling systems:
It includes:

- Tiles
- Tile adhesives and grouts
- All relevant underlays, components and accessories necessary to complete installation.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 6221 FLOOR TILING SYSTEMS for floor tiling systems.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| WMAI | Waterproofing Membrane Association NZ Inc |

### Documents

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| BPS | Building Product Specifications |
| NZBC E3/AS1 | Internal moisture |
| NZBC E3/AS2 | Internal moisture |
| AS 3958.1 | Ceramic tiles - Guide to the installation of ceramic tiles |
| AS/NZS 4671 | Steel reinforcing materials |
| AS/NZS 4858 | Wet area membranes |
| AS ISO 13007.1 | Ceramic tiles - Grouts and adhesives -Terms, definitions and specifications for adhesives |
| AS ISO 13007.3 | Ceramic tiles - Grouts and adhesives - Terms, definitions and specifications for grouts |
| BS EN 12004.1 | Adhesives for ceramic tiles. Requirements, assessment and verification of constancy of performance, classification and marking |
| BS EN 13888.1 | Grouts for ceramic tiles. Requirements, classification, designation, marking and labelling. |
| WMAI | Code of Practice for Internal Wet-area Membrane Systems |

Health & Safety at Work Act: 2015

### Warranties - tiling

1.4 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 2 years | For installation of tiling systems |

- Provide this warranty on the installer/applicator standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY - TILING SYSTEMS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.6 ACCEPTABLE PRODUCT/MATERIAL SUPPLIERS

Where a product or material supplier is named in SELECTIONS, the product/material must be provided by the named supplier. Where more than one named supplier, any one of the named suppliers will be acceptable.

1.7 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

1.8 HEALTH & SAFETY - SILICA DUST

Comply with Health & Safety at Work Act:2015 and take all necessary precautions as recommended in WorkSafe guidelines for Respirable Crystalline Silica (RCS).

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 TILES

Refer to SELECTIONS.

### Materials - preparation & underlays

2.2 LEVELLING COMPOUND / RENDER

Proprietary cementitious render / levelling compound for concrete / concrete masonry walls. Refer to SELECTIONS for details.

2.3 WATERPROOFING MEMBRANE - INTERIOR

Refer to 6811 WATERPROOFING AND ACOUSTIC UNDERLAY SYSTEMS for waterproofing membranes.

### Materials - adhesive and grout

2.4 TILE ADHESIVE

Tile adhesive, and if required primer, to suit particular location/use. To AS ISO 13007.1 and BS EN 12004.1. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.5 PROPRIETARY GROUT

Proprietary grout to suit particular location/use. To AS ISO 13007.3 and BS EN 13888.1. Refer to SELECTIONS.

### Accessories

2.6 MOVEMENT JOINT SEALANT

Neutral cured or acid-cured sealant to AS 3958.1, 2.7.5 Sealant. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.7 TILE EDGE TRIMS

Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.8 SEALER

Proprietary sealer. Refer to SELECTIONS

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

Inspect tiles on delivery to ensure that they are as specified, from the same batch, of a consistent colour and pattern and sufficient to complete the work. Reject tiles that vary widely in colour or pattern and any tiles that are damaged.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Ensure that the substrate, with the preparation called for in this section, are of the quality necessary to allow tiling of the required standard. Ensure all services and accessories are in place and located to suit the tile layout.

Ensure concrete or concrete masonry walls are fully cured and dry. Ensure new concrete has cured for 28 days or more.

If in doubt check for moisture content by hygrometer. Ensure moisture content is:
Concrete 75% relative humidity or less

3.4 CONFIRM LAYOUT

Before commencing work confirm the proposed layout of tiles, movement joints and other visual considerations of the finished work. Minimise in number of cut tiles and where possible, no cut tiles less than half size and only at the perimeter of the work.

3.5 TEMPERATURE

Unless otherwise specified by selected tiling installation product manufacturer, do not carry out tiling where the air temperature is below 5°C or substrate temperature is above 40°C.

3.6 EXTERNAL CONDITIONS

Ensure any areas of external tiling, waterproofing, floor levelling, grouting or concrete repair must be protected from hot windy conditions, rain and/or frosts during application.

3.7 LIGHTING

Light the tile work as closely and clearly as possible to that of the finished lighting, to ensure that differences in plane surface are highlighted during installation.

**Installation/application**

3.8 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.9 GENERALLY

Prepare surface and complete tiling installation in accordance with AS 3958.1 and if required complete interior waterproof membrane installation to sections 1-4 of WMAI Code of Practice for Internal Wet-area Membrane Systems as modified by NZBC E3/AS2.

**Application - substrate preparation**

3.10 PREPARE SUBSTRATES

Prepare backgrounds as described in AS 3958.1, Section 4. All surfaces to be structurally sound, dry, clean and free from movement, dirt, dust, oil, grease, wax and any other loose or contaminating materials. Concrete substrates should also be free of laitance, efflorescence, curing compounds and release agents.

Remove any projections or unevenness. Substrate material must be even and true with a maximum variation in plane of no greater than 4mm in every 2m, in accordance with AS 3958.1, section 4.

Suitably prepare backgrounds and substrates in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions of the tiling installation products for the relevant substrate type.

3.11 PRIME SUBSTRATE

If required, surfaces should be primed as per manufacturer's instructions for the selected products and substrate types. Refer to SELECTIONS.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.12 LEVELLING SUBSTRATE

Smooth out irregular concrete / concrete masonry substrates using proprietary levelling compound or render in accordance with manufacturer's requirements. Ensure maximum variation in plane of no greater than 4mm in every 2m, in accordance with AS 3958.1, section 4.

**Application - waterproofing**

3.13 INSTALL WATERPROOF MEMBRANE - INTERIOR WET AREAS

Refer to 6811 WATERPROOFING MEMBRANE AND ACOUSTIC UNDERLAY SYSTEMS for the installation of interior or exterior wet area membrane.

**Application -tiling**

3.14 FITTING TILES

Setting out, cutting and fitting of tiles to be as described in AS 3958.1, section 5. If not shown on drawings, confirm set out, bond and pattern before installation.

- Ensure cut edges are smooth and installed without jagged or flaked edges.
- Always use whole tiles or if tiles have to be cut the largest portion of a cut tile possible.
- Maintain the heights of wall tile work in full courses to the nearest dimension.
- Within allowed tolerances, ensure corners of tiles are flush and level with corners of adjacent tiles.
- Keep joint lines, including mitres, straight and of an even width.
- Fully bed trim units, moulded or shaped pieces and other accessories with an appropriate bedding material.
- Fix accessories level, plumb and true to the designated projection at detailed locations and heights.

3.15 TILE FINISH AND JOINTS

Provide tile finish and joints, including tolerances, as described in AS 3958.1, 5.4.6. Joint widths to be suited to tile and to the manufacturer's instructions.

- Ensure finished surfaces are flat and true to a tolerance of ±4mm in 2 metres from the required plane.
- Lippage between adjacent tiles shall not exceed 2mm and where joint widths are less than 3mm wide lippage shall not exceed 1mm. For tiles ground flat, such as polished tiles, lippage shall not exceed 1.5mm.
- Ensure joint widths are consistent throughout the installation, measured at the tile face.
- Ensure joint alignment is consistent throughout the installation and to a tolerance of ±4mm in 2 metres from the detailed joint alignment.
- Clean surplus bedding material from joint spaces and tile surface.

3.16 ADHESIVE APPLICATION - THIN BED

Apply a thin bed of selected tile adhesive to the adhesive manufacturer's requirements, generally final bed thickness does not exceed 3mm. Install using the following methods:

Notched trowel method

- Adhesive application to be as described in AS 3958.1, 5.6.2(a) and to adhesive manufacturers requirements. Apply adhesive to substrate to a uniform thickness and rib using notched trowel. Select trowel square notch size to suit tile size and type, to achieve full coverage. Press tile firmly onto substrate and beat into place. Additional back buttering of tiles may also be required, usually required for tiles 400x400mm and larger.

Floating method

- Adhesive application to be as described in AS 3958.1, 5.6.2(b) and to adhesive manufacturers requirements. Apply adhesive to substrate to a uniform thickness. Apply tiles with a twisting or sliding action and tap back firmly into the floated bedding.

Buttering method

- Adhesive application to be as described in AS 3958.1, 5.6.2(c) and to adhesive manufacturers requirements. Apply adhesive evenly to the back of each tile with a flat edged trowel. Press


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

tile firmly onto substrate and tap into place. This method is not suitable for mosaic tile installation.

Tiles in awkward locations

- The buttering method may be required, or fixing might be necessary to achieve full bedding, even though the notched trowel method is used generally.

Ensure that the whole of the back of the tile is in good contact with the adhesive with no voids. Remove a tile periodically during installation to ensure correct coverage. Do not fix tiles over skinned adhesive.

3.17 INSTALL TRIMS

Accurately locate and fully bed edge trim units, dividing strips, moulded or shaped pieces and other accessories with an appropriate bedding material. Fix accessories level, plumb and true to the designated projection at detailed locations and heights.

3.18 SEALING

Apply selected sealer to tiling in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

3.19 APPLY GROUTING

Remove any spacer inserts, prepare joints and apply grout in accordance with manufacturers requirements and as described in AS 3958.1, 5.7 Grouting. Ensure finish is uniform in colour, smooth and without voids, pinholes or low spots.

**Application - movement joints**

3.20 FORM MOVEMENT AND EXPANSION JOINTS

Install movement joints in accordance with AS 3958.1, 5.4.5 Movement Joints. Joints to go right through the tile and bed to the background, maintaining any waterproofing.

Movement joints to walls to be a minimum of 6mm wide and to be located:

- Over existing movement joints
- At junction between different background materials
- Where tiling abuts other materials, including sanitary fixtures and windows/doors frames.
- At inter-storey height horizontally and at 3m to 4.5m apart vertically.
- At internal vertical corners in shower compartments.

3.21 MOVEMENT AND EXPANSION JOINTS, INSTALL COMPOUND/SEALANT FILL

Carefully clean out the joint, if required install bond breaker or backing rod to control width/depth ratio, and fill with compound/sealant placed by gun. After the correct interval, finish the surface off smooth, and flush on flat areas or concave in corners, to the compound/sealant manufacturer's requirements.

**Cleaning**

3.22 CLEAN TILES

Upon completion of setting and grouting, thoroughly sponge and wash the tiles to leave them completely clean and without blemish. Finally polish glazed tiles with a clean dry cloth.

**Completion**

3.23 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 6221A ARDEX FLOOR TILING SOLUTIONS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of ARDEX New Zealand internal and external floor tiling systems.

It includes:

- Acoustic underlays
- Levelling screeds
- Primers
- Waterproofing systems
- Adhesives
- Sealants
- Grouts

### 1.1 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| CFC | Compressed fibre cement |
| PVC | Polyvinyl chloride |
| WMAI | Waterproofing Membrane Association (NZ) Incorporated |
| WPM | Waterproofing membrane |

**Documents**

### 1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC D1/AS1 | Access routes |
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| NZBC E3/AS1 | Internal moisture |
| NZBC G3/AS1 | Food preparation and prevention of contamination |
| AS/NZS 2908.2 | Cellulose-cement products - Flat sheet |
| AS 3958.1 | Ceramic tiles - Guide to the installation of ceramic tiles |
| ISO 13007.1 | Ceramic tiles - Grouts and adhesives - Terms, definitions and specifications for adhesives |
| ISO 13007.3 | Ceramic tiles - Grouts and adhesives - Terms, definitions and specifications for grouts |
| NZS 4121 | Design for access and mobility - Buildings and associated facilities |
| WMAI CoP | Code of Practice for Internal Wet Area Membrane Systems |
| Codemark™ CMNZ70189 ver0 | Ardex WPM 715 and WPM 1000 |

### 1.3 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer and supplier documents relating to this part of the work:

ARDEX Tiling and Substrate Preparation Systems (October 2023)
ARDEX Product Technical Data Sheets
ARDEX Technical Tiling Systems Bulletins
ARDEX Product Building Product Information Sheets
ARDEX Tiling General Care information sheet
BRANZ Appraisal 472 (2022) - ARDEX Undertile Internal Liquid Waterproofing Membranes - Amended 24 May 2024
BRANZ Appraisal 473 (2022) - ARDEX Undertile External Liquid Waterproofing Membranes - Amended 24 May 2024
BRANZ Appraisal 727 (2023) - ARDEX Undertile Sheet Membrane (WPM 750 and WPM 1000)


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

BRANZ Appraisal 925 (2024) - ARDEX WPM 1000 External Deck Membrane

Manufacturer/supplier contact details
Company: ARDEX New Zealand Ltd
Web: www.ardex.co.nz
Email: info@ardexnz.com
Telephone: 0800 227339

**Warranties**

1.4 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

10 years For materials

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer/supplier standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

1.5 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

2 years For installation

- Provide this warranty on the installer/applicator standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

**Requirements**

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS – MANUFACTURER / SUPPLIER REQUIREMENTS

Waterproofing applicators to be approved by ARDEX New Zealand. Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.8 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

1.9 INFORMATION FOR OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Refer to the general section 1239 OPERATION & MAINTENANCE for provision of the following general operation and maintenance information as electronic PDF format documents:

- ARDEX Tiling General Care

Provide this information prior to practical completion.

**Compliance information**

1.10 INFORMATION REQUIRED FOR CODE COMPLIANCE

Provide the following compliance documentation:

- Applicator approval certificate from the manufacturer / importer / distributor
- Producer Statement - Construction from the applicator / installer
- Other information required by the BCA in the Building Consent Approval documents

1.11 COMPLIANCE - BRANZ APPRAISAL 472

ARDEX Undertile Internal Liquid Waterproofing Membrane has been appraised as meeting provisions of the NZBC when used within the Conditions and Limitations of its BRANZ Appraisal 472.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Performance - Slip resistance

1.12 SLIP RESISTANCE - SURFACES EXEMPT FROM TESTING

Walking surfaces comply with NZBC D1/AS1, Table 2 for slip resistance requirements and are exempt from testing.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials - underlay

2.1 FLOORING UNDERLAY

Fibre cement board to AS/NZS 2908.2 manufactured from cellulose fibre, Portland cement, sand and water, or glass-mat gypsum board manufactured from gypsum core with coated fiberglass mat facing.

### Materials - levelling screeds

2.2 ARDEX K 60

Two part, self-levelling latex compound.

2.3 ARDEX A 46

Rapid setting and drying, slump free cement-based mortar.

2.4 ARDEX K 65

One part, fibre reinforced, polymer modified levelling compound.

### Materials - substrate preparation

2.5 ARDEX MULTIPRIME

One part, water-based primer for porous substrates.

2.6 ARDEX P 9

One part, water-based primer for non-porous substrates.

### Materials - waterproofing

2.7 ARDEX WPM 001

One component, fibre reinforced, acrylic polymer, liquid waterproofing membrane.

2.8 ARDEX WPM 002

Two component, fibre reinforced, acrylic polymer, liquid waterproofing membrane.

2.9 ARDEX WPM 155 RAPID

One component, polyurethane-acrylic, fast drying, liquid waterproofing membrane.

2.10 ARDEX WPM 750

Fleece-lined, synthetic rubber sheet membrane, 0.75mm thick, 1.4m wide x 20m long rolls.

### Materials - adhesives

2.11 ARDEX X 17

Flexible, polymer modified, cement-based adhesive, formulated with non-slumping mastic type properties. Classified C2TES1 to ISO 13007.1.

2.12 ARDEX X 18

Flexible, polymer fortified, fibre reinforced, cement-based adhesive, formulated with non-slumping mastic type properties. Classified C2TES1 to ISO 13007.1

2.13 ARDEX X 77

Fibre reinforced, polymer modified adhesive. Classified C2FTES1 to ISO 13007.1.

2.14 ARDEX X 56

Highly-flexible and fast setting polymer modified adhesive. Classified C1ES2 to ISO 13007.1.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.15 ARDEX OPTIMA

Highly-flexible, two part adhesive with high initial grab qualities. Classified C2TS2 to ISO 13007.1.

2.16 ARDEX X 10 GREY

Flexible, polymer fortified, cement-based adhesive, formulated with non-slumping mastic type properties. Classified C1TES1 to ISO 13007.1.

2.17 ARDEX S28 NEU

Fibre reinforced, rapid hardening, cement-based adhesive. Classified C2FTES1 to ISO 13007.1.

2.18 ARDEX WA 100

Two part epoxy adhesive. Classified R2T to ISO 13007.1.

**Materials - grouts**

2.19 ARDEX FG 8

Fine sanded, cement-based standard grout for joints 1mm to 8mm wide. Classified CG2W to ISO 13007.3.

2.20 ARDEX FS-DD

Non-sanded, cement-based grout for joints 1mm to 4mm wide. Classified CG1 to ISO 13007.3.

2.21 ARDEX EG 15

Three part stain and chemical resistant epoxy grout for joints 1.5mm to 15mm wide. Classified RG to ISO 13007.3.

**Materials - additives**

2.22 ARDEX E 90

Synthetic dispersion additive for use with ARDEX cement-based adhesives, to increase bond strength, elasticity and water resistance.

2.23 ARDEX GROUT BOOSTER

Water-based, synthetic polymer grout additive for use with cement-based grouts to improve adhesion strength, flexibility and abrasion resistance.

2.24 ARDEX ST TAPE

Uncured, self-adhesive butyl tape, fleece lined one side.

2.25 ARDEX CA 750 CONTACT ADHESIVE

Water-based contact adhesive.

2.26 TRIMS

Tile trim, edge strips, floor finish divider strips and weather bars. Available in aluminium, brass and stainless steel. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.27 MOVEMENT JOINT - SEALANT

One part, flexible acetic or neutral cure silicone sealant. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.28 MOVEMENT JOINT - BACKING ROD

Polyethylene foam (PEF) backing rod. Refer to SELECTIONS.

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions**

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

| | |
|---|---|
| Moisture content concrete: | 75% maximum relative humidity, minimum 28 day cured |
| Moisture content plywood: | 18% maximum |
| Moisture content particleboard: | 16% maximum |

**Installation/application**

3.4 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.5 APPLICATION GENERALLY

To AS 3958.1, ARDEX New Zealand Ltd instructions, and to WMAI CoP recommendations. Surfaces to be clean, sound and free of dust, oil, grease, curing compounds or release agents.

3.6 APPLY LEVELLING SCREED

Mix levelling screed to ARDEX instructions. Trowel onto prepared substrate to required thickness and fall, where required:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1:40 minimum | deck acting as a roof to NZBC E2/AS1 |
| 1:40 minimum | accessible showers to NZBC G1/AS1 |
| 1:50 minimum | shower bases to NZBC E3/AS1 |
| 1:50 minimum | shower bases for people with disabilities to NZS 4121 |
| 1:50 minimum | food processing areas (e.g. commercial kitchens) to G3/AS1 |
| 1:50 maximum | cross fall for outdoor accessways in public areas to NZS 4121 |

3.7 FLOORING UNDERLAY

Lay and fix flooring underlay to the manufacturer's instructions. Fill gaps between sheets and corners with a neutral cure silicone sealant.

3.8 APPLY PRIMER

Sponge, brush or roll primer liberally over entire substrate.

3.9 APPLY ARDEX LIQUID WPM

Reinforce corners and penetrations with ARDEX ST TAPE. Mix waterproofing components to ARDEX instructions. Brush or roll on liquid waterproofing membrane over prepared substrate. Apply two coats to achieve required minimum total dry film thickness to ARDEX product technical data sheet.

3.10 APPLY ARDEX SHEET WPM

Lay sheet membrane allowing for 50mm overlap with adjacent sheet. Working in rows lengthwise, fold back half of the width of the membrane sheet. Brush ARDEX contact adhesive to substrate and underside of membrane, avoiding the 50mm overlap. Unfold the membrane and press onto the substrate. Heat weld the 50mm overlapped membranes together.

3.11 SETTING OUT

Confirm tile layout and bond pattern. Cut tiles to tile manufacturer's recommendations. Lay tiles level, maintaining falls to drainage where required (e.g. floor wastes). Provide joint widths to the tile manufacturer's recommendations.

3.12 MOVEMENT JOINTS GENERAL

Provide movement joints to AS 3958.1:

| | |
|---|---|
| Depth: | Movement joints to go right through the tile and bed to the background. |
| Width: | 6mm |
| Locations: | At walls, columns, nibs, hobs and similar.<br>Around sanitary fixtures.<br>Around fixtures interrupting the tile surface (e.g. at junctions with joinery fixtures, window/door frames, and built in cupboards).<br>At changes in substrate. |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| Large areas: | Provide joints at not less than 4.5 metres spacing in both directions for internal floors.<br>Provide joints at not less than 3.5 metres spacing in both directions for external floors.<br>Provide joints over existing joints in the substrate. |

3.13 ADHESIVE APPLICATION GENERAL

For general floor tiling, use a 10mm x 10mm x 10mm notched trowel.

For large format tiles, use a 12mm x 12mm x 12mm notched trowel.
For mosaics, use a 4.5mm x 4.5mm x 4.5mm notched trowel.
Remove a tile periodically during installation to check for correct adhesive coverage. Do not fix tiles over skinned adhesive.

3.14 APPLY ADHESIVE

Mix adhesive to ARDEX instructions. Spread adhesive over prepared surface with a notched trowel to ARDEX recommended bed thickness.

3.15 INSTALL TRIM

Press trim into wet adhesive.

3.16 LAY TILES

Firmly press tiles into the adhesive bed for full contact between tile and adhesive with no voids. Butter the back of tiles with ribbed or keyed underside before laying into adhesive bed by spreading a thin layer of adhesive on the back of the tile. Remove surplus adhesive from tile surfaces before adhesive sets.

3.17 APPLY GROUT

Mix grout to ARDEX instructions. Work grout into joints with a rubber trowel. Allow the grout to firm up in the joint before wiping tile surface with a damp, dense sponge.

3.18 INSTALL MOVEMENT JOINT BACKING ROD

Place PEF backing rod into movement gaps. Apply a continuous bead of silicone sealant over PEF backing rod.

**Completion & Commissioning**

3.19 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 6411 VINYL SURFACING

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of vinyl surfacing including skirtings, nosings, trims and edges.
It includes:

- PVC sheet
- PVC tiles

### Documents

1.1 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC C/AS2 | Protection from fire for buildings other than risk group SH |
| NZBC D1/AS1 | Access routes |
| NZS/AS 1884 | Floor coverings - Resilient sheet and tiles - Installation practices |
| BPS | Building Product Specifications |

1.2 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's documents relating to this part of the work:

Refer to documents from Robert malcom (supplier)
Refer to "LVP" documents in Manufacturer's Literature supplied

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | Robert Malcom |
| Web: | www.robertmalcom.co.nz |

### Warranties

1.3 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 20 years: | For materials |

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer/supplier standard form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

1.4 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 years: | For execution |

- Provide this warranty on the installer/applicator standard form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.6 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Performance - Slip resistance

1.7 SLIP RESISTANCE - SURFACES EXEMPT FROM TESTING

Walking surfaces comply with NZBC D1/AS1, Table 2 for slip resistance requirements and are exempt from testing.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 VINYL TILES

High vinyl content monolayer flexible PVC tiles.

### Accessories

2.2 ADHESIVE

Standard acrylic adhesive to suit the material and substrate and to the vinyl manufacturer's requirements.

2.3 PRIMER AND SEALER

To the adhesive manufacturer's requirements for the particular substrate.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

Maintain rolls of sheet, packages of tiles and accessories undamaged and dry. Store rolls upright with other material on level surfaces in non-traffic, non-work areas that are enclosed, clean and dry.

Avoid distortion, stretching, marking and damage to edges while shifting, unrolling and handling sheet, tiles and accessories.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work. Carry out such additional preparatory work as required in bringing the substrate to suitable condition.

Confirm moisture content of substrate in accordance with NZS/AS 1884. Appendix A and for pH for concrete substrates in accordance with NZS/AS 1884. Appendix B. Do not commence laying vinyl until readings for the whole area are within acceptable levels as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Moisture content: | Timber substrate<br>- 8 -12% for air conditioned buildings<br>- 10 -14% for intermittently heated buildings<br>- 12 -16% for unheated buildings |
| | Concrete substrate 75%RH |
| pH: | Concrete substrate 9-10pH |

3.4 BEFORE COMMENCING WORK

Ensure that the building is enclosed, wet work complete, doors hung and lockable, finishes and trim complete, and good lighting available, before starting work.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.5 PREPARATION

Check that each colour supplied is from the same batch. Follow the vinyl manufacturer's requirements for conditioning of rolls and the working temperatures and conditions before, during and after laying. Protect work from solar heat gain and switch off under-floor heating during and for 48 hours either side, of the work period.

3.6 PROTECTION

Protect adjoining work surfaces and finishes during the installation.

3.7 LAYING GENERALLY

Carry out the whole of the work to NZS/AS 1884, and to the flooring manufacturer's requirements.

3.8 LAYOUT

Before beginning the installation confirm the proposed layout of material, location of seams and other visual considerations of the finished work.

**Application - General / substrate preparation**

3.9 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.10 PREPARATION, NEW PLYWOOD OR PARTICLEBOARD

Clear substrate of debris, clean off surface contamination and carry out surface repairs using a proprietary levelling compound. Carefully feather out at perimeters of repaired areas. Grind smooth, then vacuum to remove all dust.

3.11 APPLY PRIMER OR SEALER FOR VINYL SHEET

Prime and/or seal porous plaster, concrete and timber substrates to the adhesive manufacturer's requirements.

**Application - laying**

3.12 LAYING VINYL TILES

Set out from the centre of the area in two preparatory runs and modify to suit before laying tiles from the centre to the vinyl manufacturer's requirements. Ensure air is expelled and, as each section is completed, immediately roll with a 68 kg roller. Complete sections before scribing the perimeter tiles.

**Cleaning**

3.13 CLEAN VINYL

Leave vinyl flooring surfaces free of adhesive, dirt and debris. Clean and finish vinyl to manufacturer's requirements.

**Completion**

3.14 PROTECTION

Provide the following temporary protection of the finished work:

Protect from dust, damage and weather. Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for removal as part of final clean.

3.15 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.

## 4 SELECTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to the following, unless stated otherwise.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

**Materials**

4.1 VINYL TILES

| | |
|---|---|
| Location: | Refer to Arch Plans |
| Manufacturer/brand: | Robert Malcolm / Moduleo |
| Colour/number: | contractor to select |
| Size and gauge: | contractor to select |

**Accessories**

4.2 ADHESIVE

| | |
|---|---|
| Brand/type: | UZIN KE68T (CONCRETE) |

4.3 PRIMER AND SEALER

| | |
|---|---|
| Brand/type: | RLA Flexi-Seal P.U.D. Waterproof Membrane pre-primed with Roberts Universal Acrylic Primer<br>PE650 flexible primer with minimum 3MM thickness of UZIN NC196 Fibre- Reinforced Levelling Compound applied over primed Flexi-Seal PUD Waterproof Membrane. |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 6511 CARPETING

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of carpet laid conventionally (stretched), direct stuck or double bonded (double direct stuck).
It includes:

- carpet underlay
- woven sheet carpet

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 6411 VINYL SURFACING for vinyl tile flooring

### Documents

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC C/AS2 | Protection from fire for buildings other than risk group SH |
| AS/NZS 2270 | Plywood and blockboard for interior use |
| AS/NZS 2455.1 | Textile floor coverings - Installation practice - General |
| BPS | Building Product Specifications |

### Warranties

1.3 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

1 year: For materials

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer/supplier standard form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

1.4 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

1 year: For execution

- Provide this warranty on the installer/applicator standard form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.6 ACCEPTABLE PRODUCT/MATERIAL SUPPLIERS

Where a product or material supplier is named in SELECTIONS, the product/material must be provided by the named supplier. Where more than one named supplier, any one of the named suppliers will be acceptable.

1.7 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Materials

2.1 UNDERLAY
To AS/NZS 2455.1 Soft underlay and underlays manufacturer's requirements.
Refer to SELECTIONS for product selection.

2.2 CARPET
To AS/NZS 2455.1 Textile floor coverings.
Refer to SELECTIONS for product selection.

### Components

2.3 BINDER BARS
Anodised aluminium section with fluted face.

2.4 DIVIDER STRIPS
Hardwood strips 20mm x 15mm or as specified. Refer to SELECTIONS for type and size.

2.5 EDGE GRIPPER
Timber/plywood to AS/NZS 2270 with steel grippers to carpet manufacturer's requirements, constructed of sufficient pins and nails so as to withstand a minimum stretching force of 6580N over a 1220 mm length.

2.6 STAIR NOSING
Refer to SELECTIONS for type.

### Accessories

2.7 TAPE
To carpet manufacturer's requirements.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

Handle carpet on flat dollies using carpet cradles, with probes on fork- lifts and without sharp bending or folding. Store carpet in flat bins with a maximum height of three rows. Keep dry. Protect from damage.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS
Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS
Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work. Ensure all fittings and fixtures around which the carpet is to be scribed are in place. Carry out such additional preparatory work as required in bringing the substrate to suitable condition.

Confirm moisture content of substrate in accordance with AS/NZS 2455.1. Appendix B Do not commence laying carpet until readings for the whole area are within acceptable levels as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Moisture Content: | Timber substrate<br>- 8 -12% for air conditioned buildings<br>- 10 -14% for intermittently heated buildings<br>- 12 -16% for unheated buildings |
| | Concrete substrate 75%RH |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.4 BEFORE COMMENCING WORK

Ensure that the building is enclosed, wet work complete, doors hung and lockable, finishes and trim complete, and good lighting available, before starting work.

3.5 TEMPERATURE

Acclimatise carpet to a room temperature above 15°C through the whole of the installation.

3.6 PROTECTION

Protect adjoining work surfaces and finishes during the carpet installation.

3.7 TAPE

Tape for binding and seaming using type and width required by the carpet manufacturer to suit the specified carpet and the standard of performance required.

3.8 LAYING GENERALLY

Carry out the whole of the work to AS/NZS 2455.1 and to the flooring manufacturer's requirements.

3.9 LAYOUT

Plan the general layout so that:

- seams run lengthways
- traffic runs along the seam
- light from windows is not across the seam
- pile faces away from the light source.

**Application - general / substrate preparation**

3.10 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.11 PREPARING NEW CONCRETE FLOOR

To be level, smooth, clean, cured and dry. Remove loose material and dust.

3.12 PREPARING NEW WOOD PRODUCT FLOOR

To be level, sanded smooth and dry with loose material and dust removed.

**Application - carpet laying**

3.13 INSTALLATION, UNDERLAY

Installation to underlay manufacturer's requirements. Lay at right angles to the carpet direction.

3.14 INSTALLATION, CONVENTIONAL SYSTEM

Tape carpet joints, fix grippers to floor and install underlay and carpet to AS/NZS 2455.1, section 3. Stretch carpet tight in both width and length evenly without bowing, square with walls.

3.15 LAYING TO STAIRS

Install on stairs in accordance with AS/NZS 2455.1.

3.16 FIXING TRIMS

Fix binder bars, carpet to carpet bars, and trims to all junctions with other materials and to carpet edges, to the carpet manufacturer's requirements. Ensure that junctions with other materials are neatly formed, with bars and trim securely fastened to the substrate, 20mm from each end and at a maximum of 100mm centres.

**Completion**

3.17 PROTECTION

Provide the following temporary protection of the finished work:

protection from dirt, dust, damage.
Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for removal as part of final clean

3.18 SPECIAL PROTECTION

Self Adhesive carpet protective film: contractor to select and provide



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.19 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 6700 PAINTING GENERAL

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the general matters related to painting work

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 6711 PAINTING EXTERIOR for exterior paint systems.

Refer to 6721 PAINTING INTERIOR for interior paint systems.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are used throughout this part of the specification:

| | |
|---|---|
| APAS | Australian Paint Approval Scheme |
| MPNZA | Master Painters New Zealand Association Inc. |
| VOC | Volatile organic compound |

**Documents**

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC C/AS2 | Protection from fire for buildings other than risk group SH |
| AS/NZS 2311 | Guide to the painting of buildings |
| AS/NZS 2312.1 | Guide to the protection of structural steel against exterior atmospheric corrosion by the use of protective coatings - Paint Coatings |
| AS/NZS 5131 | Structural steelwork - Fabrication and erection |
| AS/NZS ISO 9001 | Quality management systems - requirements |
| SNZ TS 3404 | Durability requirements for steel structures and components |
| WorkSafe | Guidelines for the provision of facilities and general safety in the construction industry |
| WorkSafe | Guidelines for the management of lead-based paint |
| MPNZA | Health and Safety Programme |

Health and Safety at Work Act 2015

**Requirements**

1.4 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any specified manufacturer's system, or associated components and products.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Painters to be a member of MPNZA and experienced competent workers, familiar with the materials and the techniques specified.

1.6 HEALTH AND SAFETY

Refer to the requirements of the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 and WorkSafe: Guidelines for the provision of facilities and general safety in the construction industry. If the elimination or isolation of potential hazards is not possible then minimise hazards in this work on site by using the proper equipment and techniques as required in the MPNZA Health and Safety Programme. Supply protective clothing and equipment. Inform employees and others on site of the hazards and put in place procedures for dealing with emergencies.

Refer to WorkSafe: Guidelines for the management of lead-based paint for the required procedures and precautions when:

- treating/removing lead-based paint
- burning off paint
- sanding off paint
- using solvent based paint removers.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.7 MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

Obtain from each paint manufacturer the material safety sheet for each product used. Keep sheets on site and comply with the required safety procedures.

**Warranties**

1.8 WARRANTY

Warrant this work under normal environmental and use conditions against failure.

2 years: Warranty period

Refer to the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT for the required format and details of when completed warranty must be submitted.

**Performance**

1.9 MANUFACTURER'S INSPECTION

Allow the paint manufacturers to inspect the work in progress and to take samples of their products from site if requested.

1.10 INSPECTION OF WORK

Inspection of the whole of the work at each of the stages scheduled may be made. Agree a programme that will facilitate such inspection, including notification when each part and stage of the work is ready for inspection.

## 2 PRODUCTS

**Materials**

2.1 PAINT TYPES

Use the manufacturer's complete system and only the products specified.

2.2 MATERIALS GENERALLY

Use only the Manufacturer's products which are guaranteed for their consistency and performance under AS/NZS ISO 9001 and APAS approval, prepared, mixed and applied as directed in the Manufacturer's specification sheets, specification manuals and product data sheets.

2.3 THINNERS AND ADDITIVES

Only use thinners or additives within the stated limits for the particular situations specified.

**Accessories**

2.4 FILLERS

For recommendations on; fillers, stopping, paint strippers, cleaning agents, etching solutions, mould inhibitors, rust inhibitors, knotting and other commodities used for the surface preparation, refer to the manufacturer of the specified coating.

## 3 EXECUTION

**Conditions**

3.1 EXECUTION

To conform to manufacturer's requirements and those methods, practices and techniques contained in AS/NZS 2311 and WorkSafe: Guidelines for the provision of facilities and general safety in the construction industry.

3.2 PREPARE

Prepare surfaces to the coating manufacturer's requirements.

3.3 COATED SURFACES

Ensure that substrate surfaces are able to achieve the specified finish.

3.4 PRE-PRIMED SURFACES

Sand down any breakdown or damage of the primer to a sound surface and immediately re-prime.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.5 BRUSH DOWN

Brush down surfaces immediately before application, to remove dust, dirt and loose material.

3.6 COMPATIBILITY

Check that materials are as required by the paint manufacturers for the particular surface and conditions of exposure, and that they are compatible with each other. Use paint from the same manufacturer for each paint system. If not compatible, obtain instructions before proceeding.

3.7 TREATED SURFACES

Where surfaces have been treated with preservatives or fire retardants, check with the treatment manufacturer that coating materials are compatible with the treatment and do not inhibit its performance. If they are not compatible, obtain instructions before proceeding.

3.8 BACK PAINTING

Co-ordinate with cladding and/or lining installer as to who will do the work and timing.

Exterior
For exterior cladding and trim that require on site finishing, paint the back and exposed bottom edges at the base of the cladding (generally, bottom plate overhang and horizontal flashings) to the manufacturer's requirements, but at least to 150mm up from base. Coating to match front finish, generally apply 2 coats or 1 coat if pre-primed.
Refer to appropriate exterior paint sections SELECTION clauses for claddings to be back painted.

Interior
For lining and trim that require on site finishing and/or back painting (usually wet areas), paint the back and exposed bottom edges at the base of the lining, to the manufacturer's requirements, but at least to 150mm up from base. Coating to match front finish, generally apply 2 coats or 1 coat if pre-primed, or if no front finish seal to manufacturer's requirements.
Refer to appropriate interior paint sections SELECTION clauses for linings to be back painted.

3.9 ANCILLARY SURFACES

The coatings listed in schedules and elsewhere are of necessity simplified. Coat ancillary exposed surfaces to match similar or adjacent materials or areas, except where a fair-faced natural finish is required or items are completely prefinished. In cases of doubt obtain instructions before proceeding.

3.10 HARDWARE

Do not paint hinges or hardware that cannot be removed. If items can be removed, carefully remove hardware, fixtures and fittings before commencing work. Set aside where they cannot be damaged or misplaced and replace on completion.

3.11 PROTECTION

Use dropsheets, coverings and masking necessary to protect adjoining fixtures, fittings and spaces from paint drops, spots, spray and damage.

**Preparation - unpainted and pre-primed timber and wood based products**

3.12 MOISTURE CONTENT

Ensure moisture content at the time of application is near to the equilibrium moisture content pertaining to the particular locality in which the timber is used, without any excessive moisture content gradient between core and surface.

3.13 PREPARING DRESSED TIMBER

Ensure dressed timber is smooth, free from raised or woolly grain, planing burrs or other machining defects. Slightly round or ease sharp edges to ensure they can be properly coated. Sand timber to bring up to a smooth finish along the direction of the grain. Sand timber back to new condition timber that has been weathered.

3.14 PREPARING ROUGH SAWN TIMBER

Thoroughly brush along the direction of the grain to remove dust and dirt.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.15 PREPARING PRE-PRIMED TIMBER

Check pre-prime coat for damage, powdering, weathering or loss of adhesion. Where primer is sound, thoroughly brush along the direction of the grain to remove dust and dirt. If there is doubt, sand back and re-prime.

3.16 TIMBER SPECIES

Check that the preparation and paint system is suitable for the timber species.

3.17 PREPARING DAMAGE AND DEFECTS

Scrape clean loose or soft material holes, depressions, resin or gum pockets, knot holes, surface splits, checks, or any localised decay. Apply primer and/or sealer specified and fill these areas with linseed oil putty or other appropriate filler.

3.18 FIXINGS

Take timber fixings below the painted or clear finished surface. Leave corrosion resistant timber fixings flush with clear finished surfaces.

3.19 CLEANING

Remove grease and oil by wiping down with solvent or water-based degreasing agent. Remove resin by wiping down with solvent or water-based degreasing agent or heating and scraping. Remove sanding dust. Bad staining may be untreatable and require replacement of timber, discuss with paint manufacturer and main contractor.

**Preparation - gypsum plaster**

3.20 PREPARING GYPSUM PLASTER

Fill and sand small crevices and cracks. Surface moisture content not to exceed 12% at time of coating.

**Preparation - painted surfaces generally**

3.21 SURFACE PREPARATION

Refer to the Manufacturer's specification sheets and product data sheets. Carry out the preparatory work required by them for each of the substrates.

For interior surfaces such as paper faced plasterboard use the Manufacturer's recommended finishing compound as an aid to achieving a Level 5 finish.

3.22 MOULD

Sterilise surface mould by washing or sponging the whole surface with a one part sodium hypochlorite household bleach to three parts clean water solution. Allow bleach to act for 30 minutes and wash off with clean water. Wash cloths and sponges regularly in clean water. Reapplication may be necessary. Treat with anti-mould solution to the treatment manufacturer's requirements.

3.23 GAP FILLING

Fill cracks, holes, indented and damaged surfaces with putty, plaster filler, wood filler, or plastic wood, as appropriate and in accordance with the paint manufacturer's requirements. Allow to dry or set before sanding back level with the surface. Prime coat or seal the timber before using putty. Wet cement or gypsum base plasters before applying filler. Use only Portland cement base types, or water-insoluble organic-based gap fillers in exterior or wet areas.

**Application - before applying final coatings**

3.24 OFF-SITE WORK

Carry out off-site preparation and coating under cover, in a suitable environment and with adequate lighting. Store items both before and after coating in a clean, dry area, protected from the weather and mechanical damage, properly stacked and spaced to permit air circulation and to prevent sticking of surfaces.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.25 PRIMING JOINERY

Before priming preservative treated timber ensure that any cut surfaces have been retreated. Liberally coat end grain, allow to soak in and then recoat. Ensure LOSP. treated joinery has dried sufficiently to lose odour.

3.26 CONCEALED JOINERY SURFACES

Apply off-site coatings to all surfaces including those which will be concealed when incorporated into the building.

3.27 CONCEALED METAL SURFACES

Apply primer to suit the coating system to all metal surfaces which will be concealed when incorporated into the building.

3.28 DOORS

Prime or seal and paint all six faces of doors before hanging.

3.29 BEAD GLAZING

Before glazing apply the first two coats, or the primer and one undercoat, to rebates of stained, varnished or painted joinery and beads.

3.30 PUTTY GLAZING

Follow putty manufacturers recommendations for application, drying, and painting. Ensure that the putty is fully protected by the coating system as soon as it is sufficiently hard.

**Application - generally**

3.31 PAINTING GENERALLY

Comply with the paint manufacturer's requirements and any additional requirements in this specification.

3.32 MIXING

Thoroughly mix paints. Lift any settled pigment and ensure the paint is homogenous.

3.33 ENVIRONMENT

Paint exterior surfaces only in favourable weather conditions:

- warm dry days without frost or heavy dews
- avoid painting in direct sunlight any surfaces that absorb heat excessively
- as far as possible apply paint in the temperature range 15°C to 25°C
- do not paint if temperatures fall outside the range of 10°C and 35°C unless paints with the necessary temperature tolerance have been specified
- do not apply solvent borne paint if moisture is present on the surface

3.34 SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS

Painting work to generally follow the following sequences:

- back painting and pre-installation painting, then post-installation exposed-face painting
- complete surface preparation before commencing painting
- apply paint in the specified sequence using the specified paint
- allow full drying time between coats to the paint manufacturer's requirements
- do not expose primers, undercoats and intermediate coats beyond manufacturers stated instructions before applying the next coat
- finish broad areas before painting trim
- ensure batch numbers of tins are matched for whole areas
- internally, paint ceilings before walls and walls before joinery, trim and other items

3.35 PAINT APPLICATIONS

Select brush, roller, or pad and apply paint to the requirements of the paint manufacturer and to obtain a smooth even coating of correct thickness, uniform gloss and colour.

3.36 DRYING TIME

Before handling or applying the next coat of paint, give each coat the full drying time as required by the paint manufacturer. Ensure that surfaces are dry and that condensation does not occur before the paint reaches surface-dry condition.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.37 LIGHTLY SAND

Lightly sand primers, sealers, undercoats and intermediate coats to remove dust pick-up, protruding fibres and coarse particles. Remove dust immediately before applying the next coat.

3.38 DEFECTIVE WORK

Correct defective work immediately and re-coat as required, following precisely the paint system specified.

3.39 EACH COAT

Each coat of paint and the completed paint system to have the following qualities and properties:

- uniform finish, colour, texture, sheen and hiding power
- the specified number of coats applied
- no blemishes such as runs, sags, crinkling, fat edges, entrained paint skins, hairs, dust, bare or starved patches, cracks, brush marks, ladder marks and blistering
- proper covering of corners, crannies, thin edges, cracks, end grain and other difficult places of application

**Completion**

3.40 CLEAN

Clean adjoining surfaces, glass and fittings of any paint contamination. Clean off glass indicators at completion of the building works. Clean glass inside and out to a shining finish.

3.41 CLEAN EQUIPMENT

Use the Manufacturer's environmental wash system for the cleaning of water-based paint and plasters from brushes, rollers, plastering or spray equipment to separate the solids from the water component for safe disposal.

3.42 LEAVE

Leave the whole of this work uniform in gloss and colour, of correct thickness, free from painting defects, clean and unmarked and to the standard required by following procedures.

3.43 REMOVE

Remove dropsheets, coverings and masking to leave surrounding surfaces and areas clean, tidy and undamaged. Remove debris, unused materials and elements from the site.

3.44 REPLACE HARDWARE

Replace hardware without damage to it or the adjoining surface. Leave properly fitted and in working order.

## 4 SELECTIONS

4.1 SELECTIONS

Refer to 6711 PAINTING EXTERIOR and 6721 PAINTING INTERIOR for selections.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7120 HOT & COLD WATER SYSTEM

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to piped potable water supply systems from the network utility supply authority water main to designated points and appliances, the installation of hot water heating appliances, distributing piped hot water to other appliances, and the installation of valves.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 7150 SANITARY FIXTURES, TAPWARE & ACCESSORIES for sanitary fixtures and tapware selections.

**Documents**

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC G4/AS1 | Ventilation of buildings |
| NZBC G11/AS1 | Gas as an energy source |
| NZBC G12/AS1 | Water supplies |
| NZBC G12/AS3 | Water supplies |
| NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 | Energy Efficiency |
| AS 1432 | Copper tubes for plumbing, gas fittings and drainage applications |
| AS/NZS 1477 | PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications |
| AS/NZS 2032 | Installation of PVC pipe systems |
| AS/NZS 2033 | Installation of polyethylene pipe systems |
| AS 2345 | Dezincification resistance of copper alloys |
| AS/NZS 2492 | Cross Linked Polyethylene (PE-X) pipe for pressure applications |
| AS/NZS 2537.1 | Mechanical jointing fittings for use with cross-linked polyethylene (PE-X) for pressure applications. Plastic piping systems for hot and cold water installations - Cross linked polyethylene (PE-X) General |
| AS/NZS 2537.2 | Mechanical joining fittings for use with crosslinked Polyethylene (PE-X) for pressure applications - Plastics piping systems for hot and cold water installations - Crosslinked Polyethylene (PE-X) - Fittings |
| AS/NZS 2537.3 | Mechanical jointing fittings for use with cross-linked polyethylene (PE-X) for pressure applications. Plastic piping systems for hot and cold water installations - Cross linked polyethylene (PE-X) fitness for purpose of system |
| AS/NZS 2537.4 | Mechanical jointing fittings for use with cross-linked polyethylene (PE-X) for pressure applications. Plastic piping systems for hot and cold water installations - Cross linked polyethylene (PE-X) Guidance for the assessment of conformity. |
| AS/NZS 2642.1 | Polybutylene pipe systems - Polybutylene (PB) pipe extrusion compounds |
| AS/NZS 2642.2 | Polybutylene pipe systems - Polybutylene (PB) pipe for hot and cold water applications |
| AS/NZS 2642.3 | Polybutylene pipe systems - Mechanical jointing fittings for use with polybutylene (PB) pipes for hot and cold water applications |
| AS/NZS 2845.1 | Water supply - Backflow prevention devices - Materials, design and performance requirements |
| AS 2845.3 | Water supply - Backflow prevention devices - Field testing and maintenance |
| AS/NZS 3500.1 | Plumbing and drainage - Water services |
| AS/NZS 3500.4 | Plumbing and drainage - Heated water services |
| NZS 3501 | Specification for copper tubes for water, gas and sanitation |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| AS 3688 | Water supply and gas systems - metallic fittings and end connectors |
| AS/NZS 3879 | Solvent cements and priming fluids for PVC (PVC-U and PVC-M and ABS and ASA pipes and fittings |
| AS 4032.2 | Water supply - Valves for the control of heated water supply temperatures - Tempering valves and end-of-line temperature actuated devices |
| AS/NZS 4129 | Fittings for polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications. |
| AS/NZS 4130 | Polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications |
| NZS 4305 | Energy efficiency domestic type hot water systems |
| NZS 4602 | Low pressure copper thermal storage electric water heaters |
| NZS 4606.1 | Storage water heaters. General requirements |
| NZS 4606.2 | Storage water heaters. Specific requirements for water heaters with single shells |
| NZS 4606.3 | Storage water heaters. Specific requirements for water heaters with composite shells. |
| NZS 4607 | Installation of thermal storage electric water heaters: valve-vented systems |
| NZS 4617 | Tempering (3-port mixing) valves |
| AS 4809 | Copper pipe and fittings. Installation and commissioning |
| AS 5200 part 053 | Plumbing and drainage products, Stainless steel pipes and tubes for pressure applications. |
| AS/NZS 5601.1 | Gas installations - general installations |
| AS/NZS 60335.2.35 | Household and similar electrical appliances. Safety - Pat 2.35 Particular requirements for instantaneous water heaters |

Gas (Safety and Measurement) Regulations 2010
Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006
NZ Backflow Testing Standard: NZ Backflow Testing Standard 2019, Field testing of backflow prevention devices and verification of air gaps

**Warranties**

1.3 WARRANTY

Provide warranty for:

| | |
|---|---|
| 2 years: | For the supply and installation of the plumbing system and fixtures |

- Provide the warranty in the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

**Requirements**

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Plumbers to be experienced competent workers, familiar with the materials and the techniques specified. Carry out all work under the direct supervision of a certifying plumber under the Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006.

1.5 HOT WATER TEMPERATURES

To NZBC G12/AS1, 6.14

Storage water heaters to store water at not less than 60ºC.

Hot water piping system, with temperature controls where necessary (tempering valve etc), to provide water at the outlet at the following temperatures:

For personal hygiene fixtures (showers, baths, wash hand basins etc) temperatures to be close to but not to exceed:

- 45ºC - for early child hood centres, schools, elderly facilities, hospitals, psychiatric or disabled institutions.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- 50ºC - for personal hygiene fixtures in all other buildings.

For non-personal hygiene fixtures (kitchen sinks and equipment, laundry tubs, cleaners sinks, industrial fixtures etc) temperatures are:

- Unrestricted - direct from water heater, approx. 60°C, must be less than 65°C (for kitchen sinks and equipment, laundry tubs, cleaners sinks etc) - in all buildings.
- Unrestricted - direct from water heater not tempered (for industrial fixtures and specific items etc) - in all buildings.

This clause excludes boiling units.

**Performance**

1.6 TESTING - TO AS/NZS 3500

Test to AS/NZS 3500.1 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3, Section 17, Testing and commissioning, for cold water.

- Test reticulation system to a pressure of 1500 kpa for period not less than 30 minutes, to AS/NZS 3500.1, 17.3.1 Hydrostatic test. Test storage tanks to AS/NZS 3500.1, 17.3.2 Storage tanks (except rain water tanks).

and
AS/NZS 3500.4 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3, Section 9, Testing and commissioning, for hot water.

- Test reticulation system (excluding tanks, water heaters, and some fixtures, valves etc) to a pressure of 1500 kpa for period not less than 30 minutes, to AS/NZS 3500.4, 9.3 Testing. Test complete system (including valves, pumps, water heaters etc) under normal working conditions for a minimum of 48 hours, then check visually, to AS/NZS 3500.4, 9.3 Testing.

Confirm the timing before carrying out any tests. Supply potable water and the apparatus needed. Slowly fill service pipes with water to exclude air. Test and ensure there is no measurable loss of pressure for the minimum period. Slowly fill distribution pipes with water to exclude air. Ensure that with draw-off taps closed the system must remain water-tight.

## 2 PRODUCTS

**Materials**

2.1 COPPER PIPE

To NZBC G12/AS1, 2 Materials. Copper pipe to NZS 3501, AS 1432 (type A, B & C) and AS 3688 for fittings.

2.2 PVC-U PIPE

To NZBC G12/AS1, 2 Materials. PVC-U pipes and fittings to AS/NZS 1477 and PVC-U solvent cements and primers to AS/NZS 3879. Protect from sunlight. For cold water applications only.

2.3 POLYBUTYLENE PIPE

To NZBC G12/AS1, 2 Materials. Polybutylene tubing to AS/NZS 2642.1, AS/NZS 2642.2 and AS/NZS 2642.3 complete with fitings and accessories brand-matched . Protect from sunlight.

2.4 POLYETHYLENE PIPE

To NZBC G12/AS1, 2 Materials. Polyethylene pipes to AS/NZS 4130 and fittings to AS/NZS 4129. Except for solid black PE, protect from sunlight. For cold water applications only.

2.5 DE-ZINCIFICATION RESISTANT WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM COMPONENTS

All copper alloy components to comply with G12/AS1 clause 2.2.3 and AS 2345.

2.6 WATER METER

To the requirements of the network utility operator.

2.7 VALVES

Pressure reducing or limiting valve, filter, non-return valve, cold water expansion valve, pressure relief or temperature valve, pressure relief valve and isolating valves to NZBC G12/AS1.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTION DEVICES

Provide backflow prevention devices to AS/NZS 2845.1 where it is possible for water or contaminants to backflow into the potable water supply. Refer to NZBC G12/AS1, 3.4 Backflow protection & 3.5 Containment Backflow protection and NZBC G12/AS1, table 2, Selection of Backflow Protection and table 2A Containment Backflow Protection

2.9 TEMPERING VALVE

Tempering valve to NZS 4617 or AS 4032.2 to NZBC G12/AS1.

2.10 EXPANSION VESSEL

Expansion vessel to NZBC G12/AS, 6.6.7 Expansion Vessels or AS/NZS 3500.4 5.9 Valves and expansion vessels.

**Materials - Hot water heating appliances**

2.11 ELECTRIC HOT WATER CYLINDER, MAINS PRESSURE

To NZS 4305 NZS 4606.1, NZS 4606.2 and NZS 4606.3, electric water storage cylinder, insulated and complete with required fittings.

**Components**

2.12 INSULATION

Pre-formed pipe sections complete with bends and fittings, with fixing tape to the manufacturer's requirements and to NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 and AS/NZS 3500.4.

2.13 PROTECTIVE TAPE

Plasticised PVC tape system with primer, mastic fixing and outer coating.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXECUTION GENERALLY

Generally carry out the whole of this work and tests to NZBC G12/AS1 or AS/NZS 3500.1 and AS/NZS 3500.4 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3.

3.2 HANDLE AND STORE

Handle and store pipes, fittings and accessories to avoid damage. Store on site, under cover on a clean level area, stacked to eliminate movement and away from work in progress.

Store tapware in a shelved, dry and securely locked area. Retain tapware in the manufacturer's original packaging, complete with all fixings and installation instructions. Label each unit separately with its space/fixture number to match.

3.3 CORE HOLES AND SLEEVES

Review location and fit core holes and sleeves as needed throughout the structure in conjunction with the boxing, reinforcing and placing of concrete. Strip core holes and make good after installation of pipework.

3.4 CONCEAL

Conceal pipework within the fabric of the building unless detailed otherwise. Satin finish chrome plate exposed work, complete with matching ferrule at the surface penetration.

3.5 CORROSION

Separate all metals subject to electrolytic action from each other and from treated timber, concrete and other lime substances by space, painting of surfaces, taping, or separator strips.

3.6 THERMAL MOVEMENT

Accommodate movement in pipes resulting from temperature change by the layout of the pipe runs, by expansion joints and by sleeving through penetrations.

3.7 PIPE SIZE

Flow rates to each outlet to be no less than those given in AS/NZS 3500.1 and AS/NZS 3500.4 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3 or NZBC G12/AS1, table 3, Acceptable flow rates to sanitary fixtures. Pipe size as determined in NZBC G12/AS1, table 4, Tempering valve and nominal pipe diameters.

3.8 ELECTROLYTIC ACTION

Avoid electrolytic action by eliminating contact or continuity of water between dissimilar metals.

3.9 EXCAVATE

Excavate for the water main to a firm, even trench base in straight runs. Allow to backfill.

**Application - Jointing**

3.10 JOINTING COPPER PIPE

Braze pipe, fit alloy compression fittings, crox type joints and seal ring compression joints to NZBC G12/AS1 and AS 4809.

3.11 JOINTING PVC-U PIPE

Solvent welded joints using spigots and sockets, flanged joints and seal ring compression joints to NZBC G12/AS1 and AS/NZS 2032.

3.12 JOINTING POLYBUTYLENE PIPE

Aluminium clamped, seal ring compression or push fit "O" ring seal jointing to pipe system manufacturer's requirements.

3.13 JOINTING POLYETHYLENE PIPE

Seal ring compression joints and electrofusion to NZBC G12/AS1 and AS/NZS 2033.

**Application - Pipework installation**

3.14 WATER SUPPLY CONNECTION

Arrange with the network utility operator for a connection to the water main and from there through a water meter and gate valve. Provide back flow prevention to NZBC G12/AS1.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.15 POTABLE WATER SUPPLY PIPEWORK INSTALLATION

From connection point, run pipes complete with all fittings, support and fixing, joins and install to manufacturers specifications. Size the pipes and branches in straight runs to deliver the acceptable flow rate to AS/NZS 3500.1 and AS/NZS 3500.4 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3 or NZBC G12/AS1, table 3, Acceptable flow rates to sanitary fixtures at each outlet. Allow for the expected concurrent use of adjoining fixtures and size the piping layout to eliminate loss of pressure at any point by simultaneous draw-off. Pipework support spacing to be firmly fixed and buffered to eliminate noise and hammer, with preformed tee-connection take-offs and branches, with machine made 3 diameter bends, complete with necessary valves and fittings. Conceal pipework and pressure test before the wall linings are fixed.

3.16 HOT WATER PIPEWORK

Use a take-off spigot to give separate branches to each fitting, lay out pipes with support spacing to AS/NZS 3500.4 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3 or NZBC G12/AS1, table 9 Water supply pipework support spacing. Fix firmly and buffer to eliminate noise and hammer, with preformed tee-connection take-offs and branches, and preformed 3 diameter bends, complete with all necessary valves and fittings

Lag all pipes with rigid insulation to the manufacturer's requirements and AS/NZS 3500.4 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3 or G12/AS1.

3.17 EQUIPOTENTIAL BONDING METALLIC WATER SUPPLY PIPES

If it is an electrical requirement, before enclosing, ensure metallic water supply pipes and metallic sanitary fixtures are equipotential bonded (or at least conductor cable attached) to NZBC G12/AS1, 9.0.

3.18 IN-LINE FILTER

Install an in-line filter immediately adjacent to the main isolating valve at the point of entry to the building, in an accessible position to allow for easy cleaning.

**Application - Hot water systems**

3.19 HOT WATER CYLINDER INSTALLATION GENERALLY

Install hot water cylinders complete to the manufacturer's requirements and to NZBC G12/AS1, 6. 11, Water heater installation or NZS 4607 for Valve-vented systems.

3.20 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS - NON-GAS WATER HEATING APPLIANCES

Non-gas (electric, wet-back, solar etc) water heating appliances (storage water heaters) to be restrained to manufacturer's requirements and NZBC G12/AS1, 6.11, Water Heater Installation or AS/NZS 3500.4, 5.5.4 Seismic restraints.

3.21 INSTALLING HOT WATER PIPE INSULATION

Insulate all hot water pipes to NZBC H1/AS1-AS2 Energy Efficiency, AS/NZS 3500.4, section 8.2 Thermal insulation, and to the insulation manufacturer's instructions. Cut insulation sections tight between timber framing and tight between the webs of steel studs.

3.22 INSTALL ELECTRIC HOT WATER CYLINDERS AND BOILING CYLINDERS

Install where shown complete with all the necessary fittings to the cylinder manufacturer's requirements and in accordance with NZBC G12/AS1: 6.11 or NZS 4607 for Valve-vented systems.

3.23 INSTALL STORAGE HOT WATER CYLINDER OVERFLOW TRAY

Install drained overflow tray to storage hot water cylinder to NZBC G12/AS1.

3.24 INSTALL TEMPERING VALVE

Install 1 metre minimum from outlet of hot water cylinder and to manufacturer's instructions. Install copper pipework for 1 metre minimum downstream of tempering valve prior to connection of non-metallic pipework.

3.25 INSTALL EXPANSION VESSEL

Install expansion vessel to NZBC G12/AS, 6.6.7 Expansion Vessels or AS/NZS 3500.4, 5.9 Valves and expansion vessels.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.26 PENETRATIONS

Provide and fit collars and escutcheon plates to match the pipework at all penetrations through constructions.

**Installation - Valves**

3.27 INSTALLING BELOW GROUND ISOLATING VALVE

Install all below ground items such as main isolating valves and water meters in preformed concrete pits or approved equivalent.

3.28 INSTALLING APPLIANCE ISOLATING VALVES - CONCEALED

Install isolating valves for appliances in accessible positions. Locate in adjacent cupboards and position to allow for easy connection and operation.

3.29 INSTALLING BACKFLOW PREVENTION DEVICE

Provide and install backflow prevention device as near as practicable to the potential source of contamination, and in an accessible position for maintenance and testing to AS 2845.3 or NZ Backflow Testing Standard.

**Completion**

3.30 LABEL

Label all pipework with permanent adhesive markers at 3 metre minimum intervals.

3.31 CLEAN IN-LINE FILTER

Clean all in-line filters on completion of works.

3.32 REPLACE

Replace damaged or marked elements.

3.33 LEAVE

Leave work to the standard required by following procedures.

3.34 REMOVE

Remove debris, unused materials and elements from the site.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7150 SANITARY FIXTURES, TAPWARE & ACCESSORIES

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of sanitary fixtures, tapware and sanitary accessories.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 7120 or 7123 HOT AND COLD WATER SYSTEM for hot water cylinders.

Refer to 7420 or 7421 SANITARY SYSTEMS for the supply and fitting of waste disposal pipework Refer to the electrical section/s for electrical connection of accessories.

### Documents

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC E3/AS1 | Internal moisture |
| NZBC G1/AS1 | Personal hygiene |
| NZBC G12/AS1 | Water supplies |
| NZBC G12/AS3 | Water supplies |
| NZBC G13/AS1 | Foul water |
| NZBC G13/AS3 | Plumbing and drainage |
| AS/NZS 3000 | Electrical installations (known as the Australian/New Zealand Wiring Rules) |
| AS/NZS 3500.1 | Plumbing and drainage - water services |
| AS/NZS 3500.2 | Plumbing and drainage - sanitary plumbing and drainage |
| AS/NZS 3500.4 | Plumbing and drainage - Heated water services |
| NZS 4223.3 | Glazing in buildings - Human impact safety requirements |

Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006

### Warranties

1.3 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 2 years | For installation |

- Provide this warranty on the installer/applicator standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS – INDUSTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

Workers or supervisors of work are required to be a Certifying Plumber under the Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006. Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for additional requirements relating to qualifications.

1.6 ACCEPTABLE PRODUCT/MATERIAL SUPPLIERS

Where a product or material supplier is named in SELECTIONS, the product/material must be provided by the named supplier. Where more than one named supplier, any one of the named suppliers will be acceptable.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.7 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

## 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SANITARY FIXTURES

Refer to SELECTIONS for product selection.

2.2 TAPWARE

Refer to SELECTIONS for product selection.

2.3 SANITARY APPLIANCES

Refer to SELECTIONS for product selection.

2.4 SANITARY ACCESSORIES

Refer to SELECTIONS for product selection.

2.5 ELECTRICAL SANITARY ACCESSORIES

Refer to SELECTIONS for product selection.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Ensure water supply and drainage pipework match the requirements of selected fixtures without force or distortion.

### Installation/application

3.4 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.5 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS INCLUDING AS/NZS 3500.2

Install to NZBC G1/AS1, AS/NZS 3500.1 and AS/NZS 3500.4 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3, NZBC G12/AS1, NZBC E3/AS1, AS/NZS 3500.2, as modified by NZBC G13/AS3, and to the fixture manufacturer's installation requirements for each component.

3.6 INSTALLATION SANITARY FIXTURES

Carry out preparatory and assembly work, including connections to supply and drainage services and the application of all required slurries/bedding and sealants in sequence.

Fit the sanitary fixture in position, plumb, level, flush and rigid without stressing the attachment points of the component. Fixings to be corrosive resistant.

Seal between all sanitary fixtures and floors, wall linings, fixtures and the tops they are in, the tops and wall linings, to NZBC E3/AS1, 3.2. Fixtures include toilets, urinals, baths, basins, tubs, sinks. Tops include, vanities, bath surrounds, sink benches, etc, and their upstands. Form joint or seal between shower bases or urinals and impervious wall linings to NZBC E3/AS1, 3.3.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.7 INSTALLING URINALS - WATERLESS

Ensure discharge will not go through metal pipework/drains. Install the cartridge in each unit, charge with fluid and test for proper operation.

3.8 INSTALLING SPA BATHS

Connect up interconnected discharge jets to supply, connect waste and overflow to drainage services. Fit electric motor and pump so as to prevent vibration and noise.

3.9 INSTALLING SHOWER OR BATH DOOR AND SCREEN

To NZS 4223.3 and to the product manufacturer's requirements. Set units level, plumb and true to line and required location, with moving parts and actions freely and easily operating.

3.10 INSTALLATION TAPWARE

In accordance with the manufacturer's requirements. Maintain safe water temperatures to comply with NZBC G12/AS1, 6.14 Safe water temperatures.

3.11 SEAL SHOWER TAPWARE

Seal shower wall lining penetrations such as shower head, shower hose, mixer, taps etc to NZBC E3/AS1, Fig. 6.

3.12 SANITARY APPLIANCES

Install and provide all required connections to sanitary appliances in accordance with manufacturers requirements.

3.13 EARTHING OR EQUIPOTENTIAL BONDING METALLIC FIXTURES

Before enclosing, ensure equipotential bonding is provided to metallic water pipes and metallic sanitary fixtures using an earth bonding conductor to requirements of NZBC G12/AS1, 9.0 Equipotential bonding and/or AS/NZS 3000, 5.6 Equipotential bonding.

**Application - sanitary accessories**

3.14 INSTALLING ACCESSORIES

Fit specified fittings firmly in place, all plumb and level.

Locate at heights and/or locations shown on the drawings, or as required to comply with NZBC G1/AS1. For any dimension not shown or known, request direction before proceeding

3.15 CUTTING AND FITTING

Where cutting and fitting of the substrate is necessary for installing any unit, carry out this work before the painting or finishing of that surface. Remove any hardware when required for painting, placing it in the packaging or carton originally supplied and returning it to the secure store until ready for re-installation.

3.16 INSTALLING UNITS

Install each unit in accordance with the proprietary fixture manufacturer's requirements, using the templates and tools supplied or recommended by them. Set units level, plumb and true to line and required location, with moving parts and actions freely and easily operating. Do not make any modifications to supplied units.

**Completion & Commissioning**

3.17 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.

## 4 SELECTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to the following, unless stated otherwise.

4.1 SANITARY FITTING SCHEDULE

Supplier: Selected by contractor



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7352 TYPE 1 DOMESTIC SMOKE ALARM SYSTEMS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the installation and commissioning of Type 1 domestic smoke alarm systems.

It includes:

- Power supply
- Associated components to complete the installation

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 7702 ELECTRICAL BASIC for electrical installations such as mains and circuits where required for the supply of power to hard wired smoke alarm systems

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| dB(A) | A-weighted decibel |
| VAC | Volts alternating current |
| VDC | Volts direct current |

The following definitions apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| Heat alarm | Integral device containing heat detector and alarm sounding feature. |
| Hush-button | Feature that temporarily silences audible alarm signals triggered by conditions resembling a fire i.e. steam or dust but not generated by sources of fire (nuisance alarm). |
| Smoke alarm | Integral device containing smoke detector and alarm sounding feature. |
| Type 1 | To NZBC C/AS1 Type 1 is a single smoke alarm or multiple interconnected smoke alarm devices each containing smoke detector and alarm sounding feature. |

**Documents**

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC C/AS1 | Protection from fire for buildings with sleeping (residential) and outbuildings (risk group SH) |
| AS/NZS 1125 | Conductors in insulated electric cables and flexible cords |
| AS 1603.17 | Automatic fire detection and alarm systems - Warning equipment for people with hearing impairment |
| AS/NZS 2201.1 | Intruder alarm systems - Client's premises - Design, installation, commissioning and maintenance |
| AS/NZS 3000 | Electrical Installations (known as the Australian/New Zealand Wiring Rules) |
| AS/NZS 3808 | Insulating and sheathing materials for electric cables |
| NZS 4512 | Fire detection and alarm systems in buildings |
| NZS 4514 | Interconnected smoke alarms for houses |
| AS/NZS 5000.2 | Electric cables - Polymeric insulated - For working voltages up to and including 450/750 V |
| BS 5446.3 | Detection and alarm devices for dwellings, specification for fire alarm and carbon monoxide alarm systems for deaf and hard of hearing people |

Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Warranties

1.4 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

7 years For defects/faulty installation

- Provide this warranty on the manufacturer/supplier standard form (if not available then use the standard form in the general section 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT)

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

### Requirements

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS - ELECTRICAL WORK

Electrical work to be carried out by workers appropriately qualified to Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010 requirements, and to be inspected, tested and certified by a licensed electrical worker. Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for additional requirements relating to qualifications.

1.6 TYPE 1 DOMESTIC SMOKE ALARM SYSTEM

Comply with NZBC C/AS1 providing Type 1 domestic smoke alarm system to NZS 4514.

1.7 NO SUBSTITUTION

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

1.8 INFORMATION FOR OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Refer to the general section 1239 OPERATION & MAINTENANCE for provision of manufacturer's operation and maintenance information as electronic PDF format documents. Documents to include maintenance, checks, tests and replacement requirements to NZS 4514, Maintenance.

Provide this information prior to practical completion.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Alarm devices

2.1 MULTI-SENSOR SMOKE ALARM

Multi-sensor smoke alarm to NZS 4514 comprising two or more detection technologies i.e. ionisation and photoelectric smoke sensor or photoelectric smoke and heat sensor. Completed with alarm sounding feature and hush-button. Available wireless with long-life (minimum 10 years), non-removable, sealed battery or hard wired with back-up battery power supply. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.2 PHOTOELECTRIC SMOKE ALARM

Photoelectric smoke alarm to NZS 4514 comprising photoelectric smoke detecting technology. Completed with alarm sounding feature and hush-button. Available wireless with long-life (minimum 10 years), non-removable, sealed battery or hard wired with back-up battery power supply. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.3 HEAT ALARM

Heat alarm to NZS 4514 comprising heat detecting technology. Completed with alarm sounding feature and hush-button. Available wireless with long-life (minimum 10 years), non-removable, sealed battery or hard wired with back-up battery power supply. Refer to SELECTIONS.

### Components

2.4 CABLES

Tough plastic sheathed copper wire cable to AS/NZS 5000.2, AS/NZS 3808 and AS/NZS 1125. Minimum 1mm² solid cable for 230VAC mains powered alarm devices and minimum 0.5mm² stranded cable for extra-low voltage (less than 32VAC or 50VDC) powered alarm devices to NZS 4514.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.5 INTERNAL BATTERY - HARD WIRED ALARMS

To NZS 4514, Power Supplies. Batteries contained within alarm device to be of type nominated by the smoke alarm manufacturer and if inaccessible to be rechargeable.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

3.4 COMPATIBILITY

Confirm all interconnected devices are compatible.

### Installation - generally

3.5 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.6 LOCATION & SPACING

Location and spacing of smoke alarms to NZS 4514. Install smoke alarms within 10m of each other and a maximum of 5m away from any wall.

3.7 AUDIBLE ALARM

Install smoke alarms so that audible alarm sound pressure level when measured at 1.8m height is between 75dB(A) and 110dB(A) to NZS 4514, Alarm Signals.

3.8 POWER SUPPLY

Connect hard wired alarms to either permanently energised 230VAC mains fed from permanently energised (unswitched) circuit i.e. lighting or to external direct current (DC) power supply maintained from 230VAC mains to NZS 4514, Power Supplies.

### Installation - smoke alarm system

3.9 INSTALL CABLES

Install smoke alarm system's hard wiring to AS/NZS 3000, NZS 4514 and manufacturer's instructions.

3.10 INSTALL BATTERIES

Install primary and secondary batteries to NZS 4514 and manufacturer's instructions. Indelibly mark batteries with the date of installation.

3.11 INSTALL ALARMS

Install alarm devices to manufacturer's instructions fitted neatly and without damage to the surrounding finish using brackets and mounts supplied or recommended by the manufacturer.

3.12 INTERCONNECT

Interconnect devices so that when one activates all alarms sound.

### Completion & Commissioning

3.13 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3.14 COMPLETION - TESTS & CERTIFICATION

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general test and certification requirements at completion.

Completed smoke alarm system to be inspected, tested and where required for electrical installations certified to NZS 4514, including (but not limited to):

- Correct location of alarm devices
- Correct sound pressure level of audible alarm signals
- Correct installation to manufacturer's installation instructions
- Correct and fault free operation of the smoke alarm system and interconnected devices





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7411RI ROOFING INDUSTRIES METAL RAINWATER SYSTEMS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to Roofing Industries metal rainwater disposal systems in various metal substrates.
It includes:

- spouting
- downpipes
- fascias

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 4311RI ROOFING INDUSTRIES PROFILED METAL ROOFING for profiled metal roofing.

### 1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| BMT | Base metal thickness |
| NZMRM | New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc |

**Documents**

### 1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC E1/AS1 | Surface Water: 4.0 Downpipes, 5.0 Roof gutters |
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| AS 1397 | Continuous hot-dip metallic coated steel sheet and strip - Coatings of zinc and zinc alloyed with aluminium and magnesium |
| AS/NZS 2728 | Prefinished/pre-painted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications - Performance requirements |
| AS/NZS 3500.3 | Plumbing and drainage - Stormwater drainage |
| NZMRM CoP | NZ Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice |

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER DOCUMENTS

Manufacturer's and supplier's documents relating to this part of the work:

Roofing Industries, Ezi-Flo Rainwater Systems - brochure

Manufacturer/supplier contact details

| | |
|---|---|
| Company: | Roofing Industries Ltd |
| Web: | www.roof.co.nz |
| Email: | techinfo@roof.co.nz |
| Telephone: | 0800 844 822 |

**Warranties**

### 1.5 WARRANTY - MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER

Provide a material manufacturer/supplier warranty:

| | |
|---|---|
| 18 years: | For paint will not flake, peel or excessively fade |
| 50 years: | For substrate will not perforate through corrosion |

- Provide this warranty on the material manufacturer standard form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.6 WARRANTY - INSTALLER/APPLICATOR

Provide an installer/applicator warranty:

3 years: For workmanship

- Provide this warranty on the installation standard form.
- Commence the warranty from the date of practical completion of the contract works.

Refer to the general section 1237 WARRANTIES for additional requirements.

**Requirements**

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.8 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

**Performance**

1.9 DESIGN - NZBC E1/AS1

Layout, falls and capacity of spouting to falls and the size and position of downpipes to comply with NZBC E1/AS1. Refer to NZMRM CoP recommendations, sections 5.5, Gutters and 5.7, Downpipes.

## 2 PRODUCTS

**Materials**

2.1 STEEL - TYPE AM COATING (ALUMINIUM/ZINC/MAGNESIUM ALLOY), PRE-PAINTED

Formability steel sheet G300 for spouting, fascia and downpipes, coated to AS 1397. Prefinished / prepainted to AS/NZS 2728.

**Products**

2.2 TRADITIONAL SPOUTING

Ezi-Flo™ traditional spouting systems complete with stop-ends, matching brackets and screws. Available in a range of profiles, sizes, metal substrates and finishes, refer to SELECTIONS.

2.3 DOWNPIPES

Ezi-Flo™ round and rectangular downpipe systems, complete with accessories and brackets. Available in a range of sizes, metal substrates and finishes, refer to SELECTIONS.

2.4 FASCIAS

Ezi-Flo™ Multifit™ external fascia systems, complete with adjustable, proprietary fixing brackets and proprietary soaker flashings. Available in a range of profiles, metal substrates and finishes, refer to SELECTIONS.

**Components**

2.5 FASTENERS GENERALLY

Fixings and fasteners are to be compatible with all materials, the environment and meeting the requirements of the NZ Building Code.

2.6 RIVETS

Minimum diameter 4.0mm sealed rivets. For coated steel and aluminium materials, use aluminium rivets and for copper materials use copper rivets.

2.7 DROPPERS

Material to match spouting, sized to fit inside the downpipe.

2.8 BRACKETS

Material to match the spouting, downpipe or fascia. Refer to SELECTIONS for type.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.9 SNOW STRAPS

Type AM (aluminium/zinc/magnesium alloy) steel snows straps coated to AS 1397. Prepainted to AS/NZS 2728 to match gutter. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.10 SEALANT

Neutral cure silicone or MS Polymer sealant.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

Store on site under cover, on a clean level area, stacked to eliminate movement and away from work in progress. Avoid exposure to sunlight if strippable film is still on the product.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.
Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

3.3 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Check work previously carried out and confirm it is of the required standard for this part of the work.

Check that fascias, barges or cladding are level and true to line and face and will allow work of the required standard without distortion to the product alignment. Do not proceed until they are up to standard.

3.4 SEPARATION

Isolate dissimilar materials in close proximity as necessary by painting the surfaces or fitting separator strips of compatible materials. Place isolators between metals and treated timber and cement based materials.

3.5 THERMAL MOVEMENT

Make adequate provision in the fixing and jointing of the spouting for thermal movement in the length of the spouting. NZMRM CoP recommends that gutters with internal sliding clip or external gutter brackets, maximum lengths should be restricted to 25m for steel and 12m for copper or aluminium.

### Application - general

3.6 STANDARDS AND TOLERANCES

Refer to the general section 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general requirements.

3.7 INSTALLATION GENERALLY

Install Ezi-Flo™ rainwater systems in accordance with to Roofing Industries requirements and NZMRM CoP recommendations, where not otherwise specified. Ensure a 10mm gap is left between spouting ends and wall cladding and that any overflow from spouting and or overflows direct water to the outside of the building.

3.8 INSTALL FASCIA

Install Ezi-Flo™ fascia using proprietary fascia brackets at every rafter end, close to all corners and ends or at maximum spacing in accordance with installation guide. Assemble and fit fascia to brackets, cut and form corners or use pre-formed soaker flashings. Rivet all joints.

3.9 INSTALL STEEL SPOUTING/GUTTERS

Establish minimum falls necessary (minimum 1:500, 2mm in 1 metre) to outlets to prevent ponding and screw fix brackets true-to-line at 750mm centres maximum for spouting less than 180mm wide and 600mm centres maximum for spouting 180-300mm wide. . Install brackets close to all stop ends, at both ends of sumps and rainheads.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

In areas where snow fall is possible the centres should be 600mm maximum and snow straps fitted and this also applies for High and Extra High wind loads. Cut out neatly for and fit the pre-formed downpipe dropper and seal/solder and rivet around the joint. All installation to NZMRM CoP recommendations section 5.4, Gutters.

3.10 INSTALL STEEL DOWNPIPES

Form downpipes complete with offsets and shoes as needed with all joints lapped and sealed as required. Screw fix with matching pipe clips to rigidly stand plumb to the wall, and discharging into the stormwater gully or pipe inlet. All installation to NZMRM CoP recommendations section 5.7,Outlets & Downpipes.

3.11 INSTALL OUTLETS AND OVERFLOWS

Install outlets and overflows where required to NZMRM CoP, clauses 5.6.3 Overflows and section 5.7, Outlets & Downpipes.

**Completion & Commissioning**

3.12 TEST

Test the completed rainwater disposal system with water to ensure spouting / gutters are laid to correct falls, that both spouting / gutters and downpipes are unobstructed and that no ponding occurs in spouting/gutter.

3.13 REMOVE STRIPPABLE FILM

If rainwater system components are supplied with strippable film, remove film from any underlaps whilst installing and remove strippable film entirely upon completion prior to UV making it difficult to remove.

3.14 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7420 SANITARY SYSTEMS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to above ground gravity flow sanitary systems;

- for foul water
- from sanitary fixtures to first underground drain connection
- including system wastes, floor wastes, floor waste gullies, traps, vents and valves
- with associated components and accessories to make the system work

### 1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

Refer to 7150 SANITARY FIXTURES, TAPWARE & ACCESSORIES for sanitary fixtures tapware and accessories.

Refer to 7430 DRAINAGE for underground drains.

### 1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC G1/AS1 | Personal hygiene |
| NZBC G12/AS1 | Water supplies |
| NZBC G13/AS1 | Foul water - Sanitary plumbing |
| NZBC G13/AS3 | Foul water - Sanitary plumbing and drainage |
| AS 2887 | Plastic waste fittings |
| AS/NZS 1260 | PVC-U pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications |
| AS/NZS 2032 | Installation of PVC pipe systems |
| AS/NZS 3500.2 | Plumbing and drainage - Sanitary plumbing and drainage |

Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006

### 1.3 QUALIFICATIONS

Carry out all work under the direct supervision of a certifying plumber under the Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PVC-U WASTE, DISCHARGE AND VENT PIPES

PVC-U pipe to AS/NZS 1260 complete with fittings brand-matched to the pipe manufacturer's requirements.

### 2.2 EXPOSED PIPES AND TRAPS

Chrome plate on copper pipes and associated copper and brass fittings.

Stainless steel pipe and associated fittings
PVC,PE polyethylene or polypropylene pipe including all associated fittings.

## 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXECUTION GENERALLY - AS/NZS 3500.2

Carry out this work to AS/NZS 3500.2, as modified by NZBC G13/AS3, and complete all tests to AS/NZS 3500.2, section15 Testing of Sanitary Plumbing and Sanitary Drainage Installations.

### 3.2 ELECTROLYTIC ACTION

Avoid electrolytic action by eliminating actual contact or continuity of water between dissimilar metals.

### 3.3 EQUIPOTENTIAL BONDING METALLIC WASTE PIPES

If it is an electrical requirement, before enclosing, ensure metallic waste pipes connected to metallic drains and attached metallic sanitary fixtures are equipotential bonded (or at least conductor cable attached) similar to NZBC G12/AS1, 9.0.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.4 INSTALL TRAPS, WASTE AND VENT PIPES - AS/NZS 3500.2

Connect waste outlets to traps and run waste pipes and back vents concealed, sized and fixed to AS/NZS 3500.2, as modified by NZBC G13/AS3, and jointing to PVC-U pipes to AS/NZS 2032. Discharge wastes into the drainage system stack, soil pipe, or gully trap as shown. Bird proof mesh to all roof vents and vermin proof mesh to all untrapped waste pipes.

3.5 PENETRATIONS

At penetrations through constructions provide and fit collars and escutcheon plates to match pipework.

3.6 TEST

Confirm timing before carrying out any tests. Supply potable water and apparatus needed. Test to NZBC G13/AS1, 7.1 Test Methods or AS/NZS 3500.2, section 15 Testing of Sanitary Plumbing and Sanitary Drainage Installations,as required. Carry out and record a visual inspection that each joint showed no evidence of leaks.

3.7 CLEAN UP

Remove labels and clean fittings. Remove unused materials from the site.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7430 DRAINAGE

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and laying of gravity foul water (sewage), stormwater and groundwater drainage.

### 1.1 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC B1/AS1 | Structural provisions for buildings |
| NZBC E1/AS1 | Surface water |
| NZBC E1/AS2 | Surface water |
| NZBC E1/VM1 | Surface water |
| NZBC G1/AS1 | Personal hygiene |
| NZBC G13/AS1 | Foul water - sanitary plumbing |
| NZBC G13/AS2 | Foul water - drainage |
| NZBC G13/AS3 | Foul water - sanitary plumbing and drainage |
| AS/NZS 1254 | PVC-U pipes and fittings for Stormwater and Surface Water applications |
| AS/NZS 1260 | PVC-U pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications |
| AS/NZS 2032 | Installation of PVC pipe systems |
| AS/NZS 2033 | Installation of polyethylene pipe systems |
| AS 2439.1 | Perforated Plastics Drainage and Effluent Pipes and Fittings - Perforated drainage pipe and associated fittings |
| AS/NZS 2566.1 | Buried Flexible Pipelines - Structural Design |
| AS/NZS 2566.2 | Buried Flexible Pipelines - Installation |
| AS/NZS 3500.3 | Plumbing and drainage - Stormwater drainage |
| NZS 3104 | Specification for concrete production |
| NZS 3111 | Method of test for water and aggregate for concrete |
| AS/NZS 3500.2 | Plumbing and drainage - sanitary plumbing and drainage |
| NZS 3604 | Timber-framed buildings |
| NZS 4229 | Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design |
| NZS 4402 (set) | Method of testing soils for civil engineering purposes |
| AS/NZS 4671 | Steel reinforcing materials |
| AS/NZS 5065 | Polyethylene and polypropylene pipes and fittings for drainage and sewerage applications |
| NZCMM | NZ Concrete Masonry Manual section 6.1 Masonry Retaining Walls |
| NZTA F2 | Specification for pipe subsoil drain construction |

Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006

### 1.2 AS BUILT DOCUMENTS

Supply a 1:100 scale as-built drawing of drains and fittings to the territorial authority and to the owner on completion.

### 1.3 QUALIFICATIONS

Drainlayers to be experienced, competent and familiar with the materials and techniques specified. Carry out all work under the direct supervision of a certifying drainlayer under the Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONCRETE

17.5 MPa prescribed mix to NZS 3104.

### 2.2 REINFORCEMENT

Plain round and/or deformed steel bars, Grade 300 to AS/NZS 4671.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## Components

2.3 PVC-U PIPES

PVC-U pipes bends, junctions, fittings and joints to AS/NZS 1254 and AS/NZS 1260.

Underground PVC-U pipe to be classified as follows:

| Classification: | Use: |
|---|---|
| SN4 - SN6 | Domestic & light load areas |
| SN8 - SN10 | Commercial & Industrial medium load areas |
| SN16 | Public roads & high load areas |

2.4 PERFORATED PIPE - SUBSOIL DRAINAGE

Perforated corrugated coil high density polyethylene subsoil drainage pipe to AS 2439.1 with polypropylene filter sock over, for groundwater drainage.

2.5 GULLY TRAPS - AS/NZS 3500.2

Gully traps complete with grating to AS/NZS 3500.2, 4.6 Gullies, as modified by NZBC G13/AS3.

2.6 SURFACE WATER SUMP GRATINGS

Cast iron frame with lift-up grating.

2.7 STRIP DRAIN CHANNEL

Proprietary, modular, variable invert, plastic, steel (various types), or polymer concrete drainage channel sections and drainage sump, embedded in site concrete and fitted with selected metal gratings.

2.8 INSPECTION COVERS

Cast iron frame with screw-down cover.

## Foul water

2.9 TRENCH BACKFILLING MATERIAL, FOUL WATER - AS/NZS 3500.2

Bedding and backfilling material to AS/NZS 3500.2, 5.4, Bedding of drains, and for concrete, if required, AS/NZS 3500.2, 5.3 Concrete Support.

## Surface water

2.10 TRENCH BACKFILLING MATERIAL, SURFACE WATER - AS/NZS 3500.3

Bedding and backfilling material to AS/NZS 3500.3, section 6.2.10, 6.2.11 and 6.3.5, as modified by NZBC E1/AS2.

## Subsoil

2.11 DRAINAGE MATERIAL - SUBSOIL DRAINAGE

Free draining crushed stone, 7 mm to 20 mm in size.

## Concrete masonry retaining walls

2.12 DRAINAGE MATERIAL - SIMPLE STANDALONE CONCRETE MASONRY RETAINING WALLS

Free draining imported hardfill to the NZTA F2 specification.

Filter material comprised of clean, durable stone having a crushing resistance of not less than 100 kN when tested in accordance with NZS 3111, or a mixture of such material with clean hard sand. The filter material when tested in accordance with NZS 4402, shall comply with the following gradings:

| TEST SIEVE APERTURE | PERCENTAGE PASSING |
|---|---|
| 26.5mm | 100 |
| 13.2mm | 85-100 |
| 9.5mm | 80-95 |
| 4.75mm | 65-85 |
| 2.36mm | 50-70 |
| 1.18mm | 35-55 |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| 600µm | 18-40 |
| 300µm | 3-25 |
| 150µm | 8 maximum |
| 75µm | 0 |

**Accessories**

2.13 FILTER FABRIC

Polymeric fabric formed from a plastic yarn or a long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85% by weight of propylene, ethylene, amide, ester or vinylidene chloride. Fibres to be rot proof, chemically stable and have low water absorbency. The filter network, (woven or non-woven) must be dimensionally stable and resistant to delamination.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXCAVATE

Excavate for drains to a firm even base with correct gradients set in straight runs.
Trenches running parallel, below and close to foundations of buildings to NZS 3604 or NZS 4229 to be separated to:

- NZBC E1/AS1, 3.9.7, Proximity of Trench to Building, for stormwater and subsoil drains.
- AS/NZS 3500.3, 6.2.8, Installation near and under buildings, as modified by NZBC E1/AS2.
- NZBC G13/AS2, 5.6, Proximity of Trench to Building, for foul water drains.

### 3.2 MANUFACTURER'S REQUIREMENTS

All drainage installations to the pipe and fitting manufacturer's requirements.

### 3.3 FOUL WATER DRAINAGE GENERALLY - AS/NZS 3500.2

Carry out this work to AS/NZS 3500.2 and complete all tests to AS/NZS 3500.2, section 15 Testing of Sanitary Plumbing and Sanitary Drainage Installations.
Lay uPVC pipe systems to relevant sections of AS/NZS 2032. Lay polyethylene pipes and fittings to relevant sections of AS/NZS 2033.

### 3.4 SURFACE WATER DRAINAGE GENERALLY - AS/NZS 3500.3

Carry out stormwater drainage work to AS/NZS 3500.3, and complete all tests to AS/NZS 3500.3, section 9, as modified by NZBC E1/AS2.
Lay uPVC pipe systems to relevant sections of AS/NZS 2032, AS/NZS 2566.1 and AS/NZS 2566.2. Lay polyethylene pipes and fittings to relevant sections of AS/NZS 2033 and AS/NZS 2566.1.

### 3.5 LAY FOUL WATER DRAINS

Lay drains in straight runs to correct gradients, to discharge into the network utility operator's sewer. Set inspection fittings on a concrete base.

### 3.6 CONSTRUCT GULLY TRAPS - AS/NZS 3500.2

Set in a minimum 100mm thick concrete with top surround 25mm above paving and 75mm above other surfaces, to AS/NZS 3500.2, section 4.6, Gullies.

### 3.7 LAY STORMWATER DRAINS

Confirm the required location of downpipes and finished ground levels before commencing pipework. Set downpipe bends in concrete with the concrete brought up to protect the top of the bend from damage. Lay drains in straight runs to correct gradients to discharge into the network utility operator's stormwater system.

### 3.8 INSTALL STRIP DRAIN CHANNEL

Excavate trench and form site concrete base to fall. Set interlocking channel sections, sumps and accessories in place, all in accordance with the channel manufacturer's requirements. Check falls and install gratings and covers.

### 3.9 INSTALL SURFACE WATER SUMP

To NZBC E1/AS1 or to AS/NZS 3500.3 section 7 as modified by NZBC E1/AS2, complete with ceramic half-siphon pipe and cast iron frame with a lift out grating.

### 3.10 INSTALL STORMWATER INSPECTION CHAMBERS

Construct as detailed on a poured concrete footing to NZBC E1/AS1, 3.7, Access for maintenance, or to AS/NZS 3500.3, section 7 as modified by NZBC E1/AS2. Provide all necessary haunching to channels. Fit a cast iron cover and frame.

### 3.11 INSTALL FOUL WATER INSPECTION CHAMBERS - AS/NZS 3500.2

Construct as detailed on a poured concrete footing to AS/NZS 3500.2, 4.7 Inspection openings and 4.8 Inspection chambers, as modified by NZBC G13/AS3. Provide all necessary haunching to channels. Fit a cast iron cover and frame.

### 3.12 TESTING - FOUL WATER

Confirm timing before carrying out any tests. Supply potable water and apparatus needed.
Test to NZBC G13/AS1, 7.1 Test Methods or AS/NZS 3500.2, section 15 Testing of Sanitary Plumbing and Sanitary Drainage Installations, as required. Carry out and record a visual inspection that each joint showed no evidence of leaks.

### 3.13 TESTING - SURFACE WATER


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Confirm timing before carrying out any tests. Supply potable water and apparatus needed. Test to NZBC E1/VM1, 8.0 Drain Leakage Tests or AS/NZS 3500.3, section 9, as modified by NZBC E1/AS2 as required. Carry out and record a visual inspection that each joint showed no evidence of leaks.

**Backfilling and encasement - Foul water and surface water**

3.14 CONCRETE ENCASEMENT

Concrete encase shallow drains and drains under driveways, on a 100mm deep 17.5 MPa concrete bed reinforced with three 10mm mild steel bars. Surround pipes with a polythene membrane to allow movement and encase in 100mm 17.5 MPa concrete.

3.15 TRENCH BACKFILLING GENERALLY - FOUL WATER

Granular bedding and selected fill shall be placed in layers no greater than 100 mm loose thickness and compacted. Base bedding (beneath the pipe) shall be placed and compacted before pipes are laid. Up to 300mm above the pipe, compaction shall be by tamping by hand tool over the entire surface of each layer to produce a compact layer without obvious voids, without disturbing or distorting the drain. Run marker tape along line of the pipe on top of the bedding.

Up to 300mm above the pipe, compaction shall be by tamping by hand using a rod with a pad foot (having an area of 75 ± 25 mm by 75 ± 25 mm) over the entire surface of each layer to produce a compact layer without obvious voids, without disturbing the drains.

More than 300 mm above the pipe, compaction shall be by at least four passes of a mechanical tamping foot compactor (whacker type) with a minimum weight of 75 kg. For plastic based pipes, ensure care taken to avoid impact loading of the pipe.

3.16 TRENCH BACKFILLING GENERALLY - SURFACE WATER - AS/NZS 3500.3

Trench fill to be placed in loose layers not more than 200 mm thick and compacted to not less than 90% or 95% under pavements of the standard maximum dry density specified in AS 1289.5.4.1 or AS 1289.5.6.1, in such a way that the pipes are neither dislodged nor damaged.

The finished surface (top of trench fill) and the trench surround shall be restored, as near as practicable, to the level and condition of the existing surface before commencement of the excavation.

3.17 FOUL WATER TRENCH BACKFILLING - AS/NZS 3500.2

Carry out foul water trench backfilling to AS/NZS 3500.2, 5.1, 5.2 and 5.5 as modified by NZBC G13/AS3.

PVC-U pipe to AS/NZS 2032 and polyethylene pipes to AS/NZS 2033.

3.18 SURFACE WATER TRENCH BACKFILLING - AS/NZS 3500.3

Carry out surface water trench backfilling to AS/NZS 3500.3, 6.3.5.2.

PVC-U pipe to AS/NZS 2032 and polyethylene pipes to AS/NZS 2033.

**Subsoil ground water drainage**

3.19 FILTER FABRIC TO DRAINAGE MATERIAL - SUBSOIL DRAINAGE

Where details require drainage material to be encapsulated in filter fabric to prevent fines from blocking the aggregate. Place fabric and carefully hold in place by pinning and/or by controlled use of aggregate as ballast. After drain installation and required backfilling, complete encapsulation with fabric. Ensure filter fabric is correctly placed, sufficiently overlapped and pinned and/or secured.

3.20 LAY PERFORATED PIPING - SUBSOIL DRAINAGE

Lay perforated groundwater drainage piping with filter sock, firmly on a bed of drainage material screeded to the required gradient. Lay in straight runs to discharge into surface water drainage system. The pipe must not excessively elongate during installation. Carry drainage material up and over the pipes without disturbing them. Extend the high end of all lines up to the surface in capped, solid pipe to provide for flushing out.

3.21 LAY PERFORATED PIPING TO BASEMENT WALLS - SUBSOIL DRAINAGE

Ensure any required waterproofing and protection sheets are in place before starting work.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Lay perforated groundwater drainage piping with filter sock, firmly on a bed of drainage material screeded to the required gradient. The pipe must not excessively elongate during installation. Lay in straight runs to 1:150 gradients with invert of the highest horizontal point 50 mm minimum below floor slab level, discharging into surface water drainage system. Carry drainage material up and over the pipes without disturbing them. Fill with drainage material to full height of wall. Carry the high end of all lines up to the surface in capped, solid pipe to provide for flushing out.

3.22 LAY PERFORATED PIPING TO RETAINING WALLS - SUBSOIL DRAINAGE

Lay perforated groundwater drainage piping with filter sock, firmly on a bed of drainage metal comprising of filter material to the NZTA F2 specification. Pipe bedding not less than 75mm deep. Backfill not less than 300mm deep. The pipe must not excessively elongate during installation. Lay in straight runs to correct gradients , discharging into surface water drainage system. Carry drainage material up and over the pipes without disturbing them. Place granular fill in layers not exceeding 150 mm thick loose depth, to full height of wall, with an allowance for the thickness of the surface finish. Compact to provide support of not less than that of the adjacent material. Where geocomposite drain is used, the backfill shall follow the manufacturer's recommendations. Carry the high end of all lines up to the surface in capped, solid pipe to provide for flushing out.

3.23 CLEAN OUT SUBSOIL DRAIN INSTALLATION

Clean and flush out the whole subsoil drain installation and remove silt and debris before handing over.

## 4 SELECTIONS

4.1 PERFORATED DRAINAGE PIPING - SUBSOIL DRAINAGE

| | |
|---|---|
| Pipe brand/type: | novaflow |
| Diameter: | 110mm |
| Sock brand/type: | BIDIM filter cloth |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7513 CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEMS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of:

- diesel boilers
- gas boilers
- electric heat pumps
- aluminium radiators
- steel panel radiators
- water heated towel rails.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 7211 GAS SYSTEM UTILITY NETWORK for piped gas supply

Refer to 7212 GAS SYSTEM LPG CYLINDERS for cylinder gas supply
Refer to the HOT & COLD WATER SYSTEM section for hot and cold water piping, gas water heaters and hot water cylinders.
Refer to 7545 UNDERFLOOR HEATING for under floor heating

### Documents

1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC G10/AS1 | Piped services |
| NZBC G11/AS1 | Gas as an energy source |
| NZBC G12/AS1 | Water supplies |
| NZBC G12/AS3 | Water supplies |
| AS/NZS 3500.4 | Plumbing and drainage - Heated water services |
| NZS 5262 | Gas appliance safety |
| AS/NZS 5601.1 | Gas Installations - general installations |
| AS/NZS 60335.2.102 | Household and similar electrical appliances - Safety - Particular requirements for gas, oil and solid-fuel burning appliances having electrical connections |
| BS EN442-1 | Specification for radiators and convectors. Technical specifications and requirements |
| CoP Boilers | Approved code of practice for the design, safe operation, maintenance and servicing of boilers |

Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010 (Reprint as at 21 January 2019)
Gas (Safety and Measurement) Regulations 2010
Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006

### Warranties

1.3 WARRANTY

Warrant this part of the work under normal environmental and use conditions against failure of materials and execution:

| | |
|---|---|
| Piping system: | 10 years issued by the manufacturer |
| Boiler units and heat pumps: | 3 years issued by the manufacturer |
| Radiators: | 5 years issued by the manufacturer |
| Execution: | 1 years issued by the manufacturer's accredited installer |

### Requirements

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Gasfitters to be experienced competent workers, familiar with the materials and the techniques specified. Carry out all work under the direct supervision of a certifying gasfitter under the Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers Act 2006.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

1.5 COMPLY

Comply with the Gas (Safety and Measurement) Regulations 2010, Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010, AS/NZS 60335.2.102 and the network utility operator's requirements. Give notices for inspections and carry out tests as required.

1.6 INFORMATION FOR OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Provide the owner with the manufacturer maintenance information.

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Appliances

2.1 ELECTRIC HEAT PUMP

Air-cooled water heat pump with pumping module and helical fan for supplying hot water to underfloor heating system. Single or three phase units.

Refer to SELECTIONS for product selection.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 GENERALLY

Carry out the whole of this work to the requirements of NZBC G10/AS1: (Gas); NZBC G11/AS1; NZBC G12/AS1 or AS/NZS 3500.4 as modified by NZBC G12/AS3; AS/NZS 5601.1.

3.2 DESIGN AND INSTALL

Design and install boilers to CoP Boilers.

### Application

3.3 WETBACK CONNECTION FOR OPEN VENTED INSTALLATION

To NZBC G12/AS2. Connect wetback from a solid fuel heater to the solar water heating system. The piping between the solar water heating system and the wetback to be at least 20 mm diameter. Keep pipe length to a minimum. The pipe returning from the wetback outlet to the solar water heating system should not at any location be less than a 30° angle to the horizontal plane. No valves or constrictions are allowed in the inlet or outlet path between the solar water heating system and the wetback. Fit a thermostat and solenoid valve set at a maximum temperature of 90°C to provide over-heating protection.

3.4 CONNECT UP HEAT PUMP FOR UNDERFLOOR HEATING SYSTEM

Install heat pump complete with pumping module, in an exterior position on a level base bolted down on vibration damper pads of neoprene. Comply with the manufacturers requirements for the free area around the unit when installed. Connect up to the electrical supply in single phase or three phase configuration complying with wiring diagrams of the unit installed. Connect unit up to the water supply.

### Commissioning

3.5 POST INSTALLATION TESTING

The completed system to be fully tested and commissioned in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as necessary to ensure the system is complete.

Testing to include: Pressure test to ensure any components in the system will withstand the test pressure and has been tested for leakage and proved to be sound.

Rectify any sub-standard items and re-test.

3.6 FINAL INSPECTION AND TEST

Submit the work for inspection and test and prove to the satisfaction of the network utility operator that the installation complies with all Acts and Regulations.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Completion

3.7 REPLACE

Replace damaged, cracked or marked elements.

3.8 LEAVE

Leave appliances clean and in full working order and leave work to the standard required by following procedures.

3.9 REMOVE

Remove debris, unused materials and elements from the site.

## 4 SELECTIONS

### Appliances

4.1 CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEM - ELECTRIC HEAT PUMP

| | |
|---|---|
| Model: | contractor to select |
| Location: | living room |





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7612 RESIDENTIAL EXTRACT SYSTEMS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and installation of extract systems for residential applications. It includes:

- Kitchen extract systems
- Bathroom and laundry extract systems

### Documents

1.1 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| NZBC E3/AS1 | Internal moisture |
| NZBC G4/AS1 | Ventilation of buildings |
| AS/NZS 3000 | Electrical installations (known as the Australian/New Zealand Wiring Rules) |
| AS/NZS 60335.1 | Household and similar electrical appliances - Safety - General requirements |

Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010 (Reprint as at 21 January 2019).

Documents listed above and cited in the clauses that follow are part of this specification. However, this specification takes precedence in the event of it being at variance with the cited document.

### Requirements

1.2 CO-ORDINATE WORK

Co-ordinate all items with the main contractor, in particular cutting of penetrations and waterproofing. Exterior penetrations to NZBC E2/AS1 as consistent with the project requirements.

1.3 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.4 ELECTRICAL QUALIFICATION

Registered electrician to carry out work to Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010.

1.5 NO SUBSTITUTIONS

Substitutions are not permitted to any of the specified systems, components and associated products listed in this section.

1.6 EXTRACT FLOW RATES

To NZBC G4/AS1.

Extract fans (including associated ducts) to have a minimum flow rate of:

- 25 L/s for showers and baths
- 50 L/s for cooktops

### Compliance information

1.7 INFORMATION REQUIRED FOR CODE COMPLIANCE

Provide the following compliance documentation:

- Manufacturer, importers or distributors warranty
- Installer warranty
- Other information required by the BCA in the Building Consent Approval documents.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

### Quality control and assurance

## 2 PRODUCTS

### Kitchen extract systems

2.1 KITCHEN RANGEHOOD EXTRACT - TO ROOF

Mechanical rangehood extract system comprised of rangehood canopy, extract fan, filter, lighting, controls, metal ducting, proprietary roof flashing and cowl.

Refer to SELECTIONS for options.

2.2 KITCHEN RANGEHOOD EXTRACT - TO EXTERIOR WALL / SOFFIT

Mechanical rangehood extract system comprised of rangehood canopy, extract fan, filters, lighting, controls, metal ducting, solid duct wall sleeve, exterior grille and weatherproof cowl.

Refer to SELECTIONS for options.

### Bathroom and laundry extract systems

2.3 ROOF / CEILING MOUNTED FAN DUCTED TO ROOF

Mechanical venting system comprised of ceiling diffuser, extract fan, filter, controls, metal ducting, proprietary roof flashing and cowl.

Refer to SELECTIONS for options.

2.4 CEILING MOUNTED FAN, DUCTED TO EXTERIOR WALL / SOFFIT

Mechanical fan ducted system comprised of ceiling fan, filters, controls, aluminium foil flexi ducting joined to a solid duct sleeve sloped to remove condensation, exterior weatherproof grille and flashing.

Refer to SELECTIONS for options.

### Component

2.5 ELECTRICAL FAN SWITCH

Independent switch connected to socket outlet located near fan / unit.

Refer to SELECTIONS for run on timer requirements.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

### Installation - mechanical ventilation

3.3 INSTALL KITCHEN RANGEHOOD

Install rangehood to AS/NZS 3000, AS/NZS 60335.1 and manufacturer installation instructions. Connect unit with ducting to exit either through roof or exterior wall / soffit. Plug into electrical socket.

3.4 INSTALL BATHROOM / TOILET / LAUNDRY EXTRACT FANS

Install exterior ducted fans to manufacturer requirements to AS/NZS 3000 and NZBC G4/AS1. Duct through to roof or exterior wall / soffit. Plug into electrical socket.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.5 INSULATION CLEARANCE

Provide 50mm clearance between insulation and motor unit / electrical enclosure. Insulation can abut ducts.

3.6 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

Install switch and socket outlets to AS/NZS 3000 and AS/NZS 60335.1. Refer to electrical section(s) for requirements.

**Completion & commissioning**

3.7 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.

3.8 COMPLETION - TESTS & CERTIFICATION

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general test and certification requirements at completion.

3.9 COMMISSIONING - TESTS & CERTIFICATION

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general test and certification requirements for commissioning.





© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 7701 ELECTRICAL BASIC

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the wiring for domestic and small scale commercial installations, including:

- power
- lighting
- electrical automation
- security system
- complete with componentry
- electrically-powered fittings
- fire rated sealers, liners and accessories

### 1.1 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| AFDD | Arc Fault Detection Device |
| ELV | Extra Low Voltage |
| GLS | general lighting service |
| IP | international (ingress) protection classification |
| NUO | Network Utility Operator |
| PCB | printed circuit board |
| PIR | passive infrared |
| SIA | security integration architecture |
| TPS | tough plastic sheathed |
| TCF | Telecommunications Carriers' Forum |

**Documents**

### 1.2 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZBC E2/AS1 | External moisture provisions for timber-framed buildings up to 10 m in height |
| NZBC F6/AS1 | Visibility in escape routes |
| NZBC G4/AS1 | Ventilation of buildings |
| NZBC G9/AS1 | Electricity |
| AS/NZS 1125 | Conductors in insulated electric cables and flexible cord |
| AS/NZS 1768 | Lightning protection |
| AS/NZS 2201.1 | Intruder alarm systems - Client's premises - Design, installation, commissioning and maintenance |
| AS 2293.1:2005 | Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings - System design, installation and operation |
| AS 2293.3:2005 | Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings - Emergency escape luminaires and exit signs |
| AS/NZS 3000 | Electrical installations (known as the Australian/New Zealand Wiring Rules) |
| AS/NZS 3008.1.2 | Electrical installations - Selection of cables - Cables for alternating voltages up to and including 0.6/1 kV - Typical New Zealand installation conditions |
| AS/NZS 3100 | Approval and test specification-general requirements for electrical equipment |
| AS/NZS 3112 | Approval and test specification - Plugs and socket-outlets |
| AS/NZS 3113 | Approval and test specification - Ceiling roses |
| AS/NZS 3190 | Approval and test specification - Residual current devices (current-operated earth-leakage devices) |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

| | |
|---|---|
| AS/NZS 3439.3 | Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies - Particular requirements for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies intended to be installed in places where unskilled persons have access for their use - Distribution boards |
| NZS 4514 | Interconnected smoke alarms for houses |
| NZS 4246 | Energy Efficiency - Installing bulking thermal insulation in residential buildings |
| AS/NZS 5000.2 | Electric cables - Polymeric insulated - for working voltages up to and including 450/750v |
| AS/NZS 60335.1 | Household and similar electrical appliances - Safety - General requirements |
| AS/NZS 60695.11.5 | Fire hazard testing - Test flames - Needle-flame test method - Apparatus, conformity test arrangement and guidance. |
| AS/NZS 61439.3 | Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies - Part 3: Distribution boards intended to be operated by ordinary persons (DBO). |
| IEC 61643 | Components for low voltage surge protection devices |

Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010 (Reprint as at 21 January 2019).
TCF Premises Wiring Cable Installers Guidelines for Telecommunication Services

Documents listed above and cited in the clauses that follow are part of this specification. However, this specification takes precedence in the event of it being at variance with the cited document.

**Warranties**

1.3 WARRANTY

Warrant the complete electrical installation under normal environmental and use conditions against failure of materials and execution.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 year: | Warranty period |

Refer to the general section for the required form of 1237WA WARRANTY AGREEMENT and details of when completed warranty must be submitted.

**Requirements**

1.4 COMPLY

Comply with the Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010, AS/NZS 3000, AS/NZS 3008.1.2, and TCF Premises Wiring Cable Installers Guidelines for Telecommunication Services for listed and prescribed work and with the utility network operator's requirements. Apply for the service connection. Arrange for the required inspections of listed work. Pay all fees.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS GENERALLY

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to qualifications.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS WORKERS – LICENSED UNDER STATUTE

Workers and supervisors to be appropriately qualified to applicable legislative requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for additional requirements relating to qualifications.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS - SECURITY SYSTEM

Installation by an installer licensed under the Private Investigators and Security Guards Act. Installation of all security equipment to comply with AS/NZS 2201.1 Intruder alarm systems - Client's premises - Design, installation, commissioning and maintenance.

1.8 CONFIRM SELECTIONS

Confirm selections of all outlet fittings and hardware with the owner in writing before ordering.

1.9 ELECTRICAL CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE

Supply a certificate of compliance (CoC) to the owner, and if required the NUO, as required by the Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010, prior to connection.

- Arrange for the NUO to inspect before the meter installation, listed work inspection, polarity check and supply becoming live.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- Arrange for an inspector to inspect high risk electrical work as required by regulation 70.

1.10 ELECTRICAL SAFETY CERTIFICATE

Provide an Electrical Safety Certificate (ESC), as required by the Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010, Reg 74A, to the owner and when required the BCA. To be provided no later than 20 working days after connection and prior to Practical Completion.

**Quality control and assurance**

1.11 INSPECTIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| Coordinate with COMPLETION - TESTS & CERTIFICATIONC and COMMISSIONING - TESTS & CERTIFICATION. | |


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MAINS SUPPLY

Tough plastic sheathed neutral screened cable to AS/NZS 5000.2 and AS/NZS 3008.1.2, with a minimum rating of 60 amps per phase. Include pilot cable where required by network utility company.

2.2 CABLES

Tough plastic sheathed copper conductors to AS/NZS 5000.2, stranded above 1.0mm², and to AS/NZS 3008.1.2. Minimum sizes as below. Increase sizes if the method of installation, thermal insulation, cable length or load will reduce the cable rating below that of the MCB rating, or produce an excessive voltage drop.

| | |
|---|---|
| Lighting circuits: | Domestic: 1.5mm² on 10 amp MCBs |
| Lighting circuits: | Commercial: 1.5mm² on 16 amp MCBs |
| Power circuits: | 2.5mm² on 16 amp MCBs for domestic and unenclosed or unfilled cavity construction |
| | 2.5mm² on 16 amp MCBs for domestic insulated construction, or filled cavity |
| | 2.5mm² on 20 amp MCBs for unenclosed or unfilled cavity construction |
| | 2.5mm² on 16 amp MCBs for insulated construction, or filled cavity, or lengths over 30 metres |
| Hot water cylinder circuits: | Single phase: 2.5mm² on 20 amp MCBs |
| Range/oven/hob circuits: | Single phase: 6mm² high temperature cable on 32 amp MCBs |

Heat resistant cable for final connections to all heated appliances, and high temperature cable in ambient conditions that may be above 35°C (roof spaces above insulation etc).

2.3 METER BOX

Proprietary manufactured, zinc plated powder coated metal case, or ABS plastic, with glazed panel door, weatherproof where mounted outdoors, and complete with meter mounting, main switch and fuse.

2.4 DISTRIBUTION BOARD

Flush surface mount boards manufactured to AS/NZS 3439.3 , or AS/NZS 61439.3, and installed in accordance with AS/NZS 3000. Manufactured from engineering grade resin with a glow wire rating of 850°C, complete with neutral and earth busbars, and insulated comb phase bar. Distribution boards to have 20% spare capacity for future additions and alterations.

2.5 CIRCUIT PROTECTION

General requirements including main switch 63A or 100A. Residual current protection 30mA, ensure RCCBs' meet Type A and comply with AS/NZS 3190. MCBs to 4.5kA or 6kA rated.

2.6 SURGE PROTECTION

Protection for the homes appliances with IEC 61643 Class ll surge protection devices fitted to the switchboard. For variable electronic equipment fit IEC 61643 Class lll surge protection to switched socket outlets.

2.7 WALL BOXES

Standard grid size or equivalent to be manufactured from plastic or metal, with 2 or more gang size to be metal with steel inserts for accessory securing screws. Screw fixed.

2.8 SWITCH UNITS

Single pole switches to be 16 amp minimum rated, double pole or intermediate to be 16 amp minimum rated. All switches to be 230 volt a.c. polycarbonate flushplate units.
Label all switch units that control electrical equipment or special lighting circuits by proprietary engraved switch mechanisms where applicable.
Refer to drawings/schedules for number of switches per unit, dimmer units, neon (indicator or toggle) units and 2 way units.
Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.9 SWITCHED SOCKET UNITS


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

10 amp, 230 volt flat 3 pin socket outlets fitted with safety shutters and manufactured to AS/NZS 3100, AS/NZS 3112 and AS/NZS 3113, single or multi gang as detailed.

2.10 CEILING ROSES

White plastic mounting base with screwed cover, manufactured to AS/NZS 3113. Terminal type. Suspended fittings to have sheathed round flexible cord to AS/NZS 3008.1.2. Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.11 HOT WATER SYSTEM SWITCH

One way 20 amp switch complete with cable clamp for flexible PVC conduit to element enclosure.

2.12 BATTEN HOLDERS

Standard white plastic bayonet cap, with cap angled where wall mounted. Brass liners.

2.13 FIRE & SMOKE ALARM SYSYEM

Refer to SELECTIONS.

2.14 DOOR BELL SYSTEM

Complete with transformer for mounting on distribution board.

2.15 LIGHT FITTINGS

Fluorescent and High Intensity Discharge fittings with low loss control gear and power factor corrected to 0.95 minimum. Control gear suitable for dimming if this is required. All fittings complete with lamps; Incandescent GLS lamps pearl, coiled-coil 230v rated, bayonet cap; Fluorescent triphosphor 2700K; CFL; halogen ELV 12v dichroic reflector with cover glass unless detailed otherwise; integral/non-integral LEDs, reflectors, lenses, heatsinks and drivers - 3,000K to 4,000K, CRI >80, L70.

2.16 RECESSED LIGHT FITTINGS - RESIDENTIAL

Residential recessed light fittings to AS/NZS 3000, 4.5.2.3.5:

- Existing fittings or retrofit situations, fittings maybe unmarked.
- New fittings can only be labelled - CA 80, CA 90, CA 135, IC, IC-F, & IC-4.

Refer to clause INSULATION & GENERAL CLEARANCES for clearances from insulation and other elements.

2.17 EXHAUST FANS

Ceiling, wall or duct mounted exhaust fans for ventilation to NZBC G4/AS1, and compliant with AS/NZS 60335.1.

2.18 HEATED TOWEL RAILS

Fixed wired heated towel warmers, double insulated, IPX4 splash-proof, compliant with AS/NZS 60335.1, scratch resistant powdercoated or chrome finish.

2.19 EXTERIOR LIGHT FITTINGS

Using materials with superior UV protection, impact strength, and addition chemical resistance. Weather protection minimums:

- IP54 for protected areas under eaves or verandahs etc.
- IP55 for exposed areas not subject to pressurised water (hoses).
- IP66 for areas subject to pressurised water or major splashing.
- IP67 for inground lights
- IP68 for submerged pool fittings

**Security system**

2.20 CONTROL PANEL

Control panel system with a minimum of one installer code, one master code, 6 zones minimum and 6 user codes. The installer to select codes to suit installation.

2.21 DETECTORS

There are two main types of detectors:

- Standard passive infrared sensors: Install in stable environments with no wind flow and no direct bright sunlight.
- Passive infrared/ microwave sensors: Install in area where environmental stability is an issue.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

2.22 AUDIBLE DEVICES

Internal sirens can be either a 12V Piezo Siren or a Horn speaker with a sound pressure level of no less than 95dB.

External siren can be either a stainless steel design or have hardened plastic casing. Both designs to be fully weatherproof but not limited to IP66 Rating. The siren box to contain a strobe diffuser in either blue or red. The siren shall contain a horn speaker, 12v speaker or an electronic siren. The external siren box to have both a cover and rear wall tamper mechanism.

2.23 CABLING

Security alarm wiring to NZS/AS 1125 for cables.

Security alarm wiring to be multi stranded and not single stranded, minimum 0.5mm².

2.24 PERIPHERALS

Fit anti-tamper devices to detectors, control panels and equipment housings, programmed to give a tamper indication when the system is unset and a tamper alarm when the system is set.

Standard keypad manufactured of moulded hardened plastic with either a LED or LCD screen, to match the style of the wiring accessories in diameter, colour and aesthetics.

2.25 COMMUNICATIONS

Digital dialler to be built into the PCB of all control panels, with the options for both monitoring and remote dial in windows based software. Digital dialler to comply with all the industry standard communication formats including contact I.D and SIA, and NZ Telepermit certification.

Remote software able to upload / download programming changes and or history events and change status of the security alarm with the ability to be turned off if required.

## 3 EXECUTION

### Conditions

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING OF PRODUCTS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to delivery, storage and handling of products.

3.2 ROUTINE MATTERS

Refer to 1250 TEMPORARY WORKS & SERVICES for protection requirements.

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for requirements relating to defective or damaged work, removal of protection and cleaning.

### Installation

3.3 MAIN SUPPLY

Lay underground mains to the NUO requirements. Excavate trench, install cable and marker tape and backfill.

3.4 METER BOX

Fit to meter box manufacturer and Electricity Retailer requirements. Recess into external wall in sheltered area and flash to weatherproof to NZBC E2/AS1, Figure 9.1.8.3B: General meterbox and similar penetrations. Arrange for meter installation and connection.

3.5 DISTRIBUTION BOARD

Fit to AS/NZS 3000 and board manufacturer requirements. Recess into wall or surface mount and ensure fire containment properties of the enclosure are maintained.

3.6 CIRCUIT PROTECTION

Install MCBs at distribution board to AS/NZS 3000 to protect each final sub circuit.

3.7 EARTHING CONDUCTIVE STRUCTURE & MATERIALS

Earth all at risk structural metalwork and conductive building materials to AS/NZS 3000, 5.4.6, and the Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010.

If they form part of the building, this includes:

- Structural steel frames or members



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

- Light steel framing
- Exposed conductive materials, like metal sink/tub or vanity benches etc, with attached electrical units or equipment

3.8 EQUIPOTENTIAL BONDING

Equipotential Bond extraneous conductive parts together and to the electrical installation earthing system to AS/NZS 3000, 5.6, and the Electricity (Safety) Regulations 2010 and the fitting manufacturer requirements.

If they form part of the building, this includes:

- Conductive water piping (including tap etc) and exposed related connected conductive surfaces (like metal sink benches or metal cladding etc). Not required where isolated by non-conductors (plastic pipe etc) from the mass of earth.
- Other conductive piping (not earthed by other means) and exposed related connected conductive surfaces.
- Concrete reinforcing - for floor or wall forming part of a room with a shower or bath, or the shell and surround of a swimming/spa pool
- Built-in Swimming pool and spa pool - exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment, as well as exposed conductive, fixtures, fittings and pool structures within 1.25m of pool edge

3.9 MAIN EARTH

Provide a plastic toby box to contain and protect the earth electrode. Fix the connecting earth wiring closely and securely against wall surfaces.

3.10 ARC FAULT DETECTION DEVICE (AFDD)

To AS/NZS 3000 clause 2.9, AFDD on all final sub-circuits not exceeding 20A.

3.11 EARTH LEAKAGE PROTECTION

Install RCD protection to AS/NZS 3000.

3.12 SURGE PROTECTION

Install surge protection devices to manufacturer requirements and in accordance with AS/NZS 3000 and AS/NZS 1768. When fitting IEC 61643 Class II protection at the switchboard, protect the device by a dedicated MCB.

3.13 RCD - RESIDENTIAL INSTALLATIONS

Install 30mA RCD protection at the switchboard for all final sub circuits to control outlets and lighting except for fixed or stationary cooking equipment, to AS/NZS 3000.

3.14 RCD-AFDD COMBINED - RESIDENTIAL INSTALLATIONS

Install a 30mARCD - AFDD combined device (RCD Type II) at the switchboard for all final sub circuits not exceeding 20A, to control and protect outlets and lighting to AS/NZS 3000, (2018, 2.6 & 2.9). Protect over 20A to 32A final sub circuits with separate RCD and to AS/NZS 3000.

3.15 RCD - SPECIFIC INSTALLATIONS

Install fixed wired RCD protected outlets (SRCD) in the following higher risk areas:

- Wet areas: bathrooms, laundries, kitchens.
- Near pools and water features.
- Where intended for use with cleaning equipment.
- Hand-held tools subject to movement in use, i.e. work-shops, garages.

3.16 SET-OUT

The position of outlets and equipment shown on drawings is indicative of requirements. Confirm documents and site conditions are not in conflict with other services or features. Resolve conflicts and discrepancies before proceeding with work affected. Confirm on site the exact location, disposition and mounting heights of all outlets, fittings, equipment, penetrations, and use of exposed wiring. Fix outlet items level, plumb and in line.

3.17 CABLING

Install wiring systems to AS/NZS 3000. All cabling run concealed. No TPS cable laid directly in concrete. Locate holes in timber framing for the passage of cables at the centre line of the timber member. Install cable in conduits where required to pass through concrete or underground. In walls run cabling horizontally and vertically in straight lines. In ceilings either run cabling along ceiling framing or attached to catenary wires. Clip cabling to ceiling framing/catenary wires.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.18 CABLING CIRCUITS

Install all circuits with the appropriately rated cable and circuit protection. Install with a maximum of 8 light switch units or 4 double or single switched socket units on any circuit. Minimum 2 lighting circuits per floor. Separate circuits for all electric heating appliances. Kitchen sockets to be on at least two different circuits.

3.19 WALL BOXES

Mount flush in cavity construction size to fit products selected. Fix vertically mounted wall boxes to studs. Screw fix horizontally mounted switched socket outlet wall boxes to solid blocking or nogs. Fix switch panel wall boxes to solid blocking.

3.20 SWITCHES AND SWITCHED SOCKET UNITS

Fit all switch units and socket units to the manufacturers requirements with heights and mounting directions as indicated in SELECTIONS.

3.21 LIGHT FITTINGS

Install light fittings in locations and at heights specified and confirmed by the owner, in accordance with the fitting manufacturer requirements.

3.22 EXTRA LOW VOLTAGE LIGHTING

Use electronic, transformers (halogen) or drivers (LED) for ELV lamps, one transformer/driver per lamp. Locate to manufacturer requirements and as close as practicable to the lamp. Ensure transformers/drivers and rear of light fittings are adequately ventilated and appropriately clear of any building elements, to AS/NZS 3000.

3.23 INSULATION & GENERAL CLEARANCES

Some electrical and mechanical services, and equipment may need to have a gap to insulation and some building elements. The gaps should be to the NZS 4246 based tables below or to the equipment manufacturers requirements if they require larger gaps. Smaller gaps to manufacturers requirements can be used for equipment specifically manufactured with heat shielding or similar (excludes light fittings).

Installed gap not to be more than 50mm bigger than the required gap.
The following tables are subject to:

- The requirements of NZS 4246 for insulation.
- The insulation is exposed to the source of heat or equipment etc.
- Insulation, has passed the needle flame test to AS/NZS 60695.11.5 and/or is non-combustible.
- Gaps to hot surfaces may have to be increased with non-compliant insulation and plastic/polymeric type insulation (EPS, XPS, PIR, etc), check with insulation manufacturer.
- Gaps to hot surfaces may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation, check with equipment manufacturer.
- "Secure insulation" if required means, glue, mechanical fix, or provide fixed barriers at gap edge of insulation to hold in place. Rigid or semi rigid insulation may only need a firm friction fit (secure loose pieces).
- Loose fill insulation will require fixed barriers to NZS 4246 to maintain gaps.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3.24 LIGHT FITTINGS TO INSULATION

| Type of fitting | Minimum insulation clearance | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| Recessed, marked NON-IC, or unmarked | 100mm (increase if over 100W) | To NZS 4246. NON-IC fittings and new or old unmarked & unknown fittings, and/or insulation. Insulation to be secured. |
| Recessed, CA 80, CA 90, or CA 135. | Abut fittings | To NZS 4246. Do not cover the fittings. |
| Recessed, IC, IC-F, or IC-4. | Abut & cover fittings. | To NZS 4246. Ensure insulation complies. |
| Recessed, marked Do-Not-Cover | Manufacturer clearances | To NZS 4246. Do not cover the fittings. |
| Independent control gear | Place on top of insulation & 50mm from fittings | To NZS 4246. If not on top allow 50mm clearance to insulation, do not cover. Includes, transformers, ballasts & drivers etc. |
| Surface fittings not exposed to insulation | Nil | To NZS 4246. Where surface fittings are isolated from insulation by appropriate linings. Excludes high heat fittings. |
| Surface fittings & exposed insulation | 200mm | To NZS 4246. This is exposed insulation to any part of the exposed fitting & bulb/tube (e.g. exposed light in an unlined basement). Insulation to be secured. |

## 3.25 RECESSED LIGHT FITTINGS TO COMBUSTIBLE BUILDING ELEMENTS

| Type of recessed fitting | Minimum building element clearance ** | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| Marked NON-IC, or unmarked, ≤100W | 100mm, vertical & horizontal | To AS/NZS 3000:2018 |
| Marked NON-IC, or unmarked, >100W | 200mm, vertical & horizontal | To AS/NZS 3000:2007 |
| CA 80, CA 90 or CA 135 | 100mm, vertical & horizontal | To AS/NZS 3000:2018 |
| IC, IC-F or IC-4 | 100mm, horizontal<br>NA, vertical | To AS/NZS 3000:2018<br>To be NA vertical, fitting must be covered by insulation. If not covered use 100mm clearance. |
| Marked Do-Not-Cover | 100mm, vertical & horizontal | To AS/NZS 3000:2018.<br>Manufacturer clearances if greater than 100mm |

** Combustible building elements exclude metal elements, but include timber framing or other timber based elements, and normal linings etc. Highly flammable materials & those likely to melt will need more clearance.


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

3.26 INBUILT RECESSED HOT APPLIANCES TO INSULATION

| Appliance | Minimum insulation clearance | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| Electrical heaters | Manufacturer clearances | To NZS 4246. |
| Electrical heaters | 100mm | Manufacturer clearances not known. To NZS 4246. Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation. Insulation to be secured. |
| Heat producing appliances & equipment | Manufacturer clearances | To NZS 4246. |
| Heat producing appliances & equipment | 50mm | Manufacturer clearances not known. To NZS 4246. Clearance may be able to be reduced with non-combustible insulation. Insulation to be secured. |

Note - Appliances and equipment excludes cables, junction boxes, light switches & power sockets etc

3.27 EXTRACTS, VENTS & ROOF UNDERLAY TO INSULATION

| Appliance | Minimum insulation clearance | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| Ducted fan motors | 50mm | To NZS 4246. Includes ducted rangehoods, extractors etc. Applies to the motor unit and electrical enclosures (not the ducts). |
| Ducted fan ducts | Abut | To NZS 4246. Excludes motor unit and electrical enclosures. |
| Unducted fan motors usually discharging to ceiling space | 200mm | To NZS 4246. Includes unducted, rangehoods, extractors etc, discharging into roof space.<br>To prevent debris falling into motor.<br>Clearance may be able to be reduced, by providing a fixed barrier around the vent. |
| Roofing material/underlay | 25mm | To NZS 4246. Maintain clearance from underside of roofing or flexible roofing underlay, to prevent wicking. |

3.28 ELECTRIC HOT WATER SYSTEM

For storage heaters, wire as a separate circuit through a wall-mounted isolating switch, with the cable from switch to element encased in flexible PVC conduit, clamp fixed at each end. Hot water cylinders, thermostats and 3000 watt element supplied and fitted under the hot and cold water system section.

3.29 ELECTRIC POWERED FITTINGS AND EQUIPMENT

Install and wire fittings and equipment to individual fittings and equipment manufacturer requirements. Refer to the drawings for required layouts and locations for equipment. Refer to SELECTIONS for schedules of fittings.

3.30 BATHROOM ELECTRICAL FIXTURES

Install all electrical fixtures. Connect the following bathroom and toilet electrical items:

- Heated towel rails: Install to manufacturers requirements and installed in accordance with AS/NZS 3000
- Mirror demisters: Locate centrally above the wash hand basin(s). Connect wiring to room lighting unless specified otherwise.
- Exhaust fans: Install exhaust fans to manufacturer requirements. Installed in accordance with AS/NZS 3000 and NZBC G4/AS1.

3.31 OUTDOOR/EXTERIOR SERVICES

Install all wiring systems in accordance with AS/NZS 3000 and in accordance with the manufacturer recommendations:


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

Provide circuits and connections for exterior installations, including ELV 12/24 Volt path lighting and electronic irrigation systems. Refer to drawings for connection points. Where underground, ensure appropriate protection, such as thickness of sheathing, conduit, depth of cabling, and proximity to other services.

Use the appropriate rated fittings for power control and power supply. Weather protected switches and sockets to IP56. Install to manufacturer specifications using recommended fittings and sealants to maintain the products integrity.

Earth leakage protection to be provided for in areas where there is increased risk to human safety in the form of either RCDs at the distribution board, or socket outlet. RCDs are recommended for visible awareness of protection.

3.32 LABELLING

Include label under each controller, switch and circuit breaker on distribution boards. Include a warning notice if light dimmers are used in the installation. List the rating of each circuit.

**Security system**

3.33 SECURITY SYSTEM

Install to the system manufacturer requirements, control panel, detectors and associated equipment fitted neatly and without damage to surrounding finishes. Installation of security equipment to AS/NZS 2201.1 Intruder alarm systems - Client's premises - Design, installation, commissioning and maintenance. All 230v mains power connections to the security panel are to be in accordance with AS/NZS 3000. The 230V power is to be switched using a dedicated single gang Isolator switch or similar.

**Completion & Commissioning**

3.34 COMPLETION MATTERS

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for completion requirements and if required commissioning requirements.

3.35 COMPLETION - TESTS & CERTIFICATION

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general test and certification requirements at completion.

| | |
|---|---|

3.36 COMMISSIONING - TESTS & CERTIFICATION

Refer to 1270 CONSTRUCTION for general test and certification requirements for commissioning.

| | |
|---|---|


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

# 8110 RETAINING WALLS

## 1 GENERAL

This section relates to the supply and erection of proprietary, fabricated, retaining wall systems.

1.1 RELATED WORK

Refer to 7430 DRAINAGE for retaining wall groundwater drainage and backfilling with drainage material.

1.2 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Refer to the general section 1232 INTERPRETATION & DEFINITIONS for abbreviations and definitions used throughout the specification.

The following abbreviations apply specifically to this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| FSC | Forest Stewardship Council |
| PEFC | Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification |

1.3 DOCUMENTS

Refer to the general section 1233 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS. The following documents are specifically referred to in this section:

| | |
|---|---|
| NZS 3104 | Specification for concrete production |
| NZS 3602 | Timber and wood-based products for use in building |
| NZS 3605 | Timber piles and poles for use in buildings |
| AS/NZS 4455.3 | Masonry units, pavers, flags and segmental retaining wall units - Segmental retaining wall units |
| AS/NZS 4671 | Steel reinforcing materials |

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Carry out retaining wall work using competent, experienced people, familiar with the materials and techniques specified.

## 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE

Prescribed mix to NZS 3104, minimum 17.5 MPa. Maximum aggregate size 10mm.

**Timber retaining walls**

2.2 TIMBER ELEMENTS

Radiata pine CCA (preservative code 01 or 02) treated, to NZS 3602, table 1A, Requirements for wood-based building components to achieve a 50-year durability performance.

2.3 TIMBER POLES

Radiata pine, selected in accordance with NZS 3605, treated H5 CCA (preservative code 01 or 02) to NZS 3602 table 1A, Requirements for wood-based building components to achieve a 50-year durability performance and to NZS 3605 for cross-section, length, straightness and strength branding. Do not put cut ends into ground. Treat all cut ends or notches with a liberal brush coat of copper napthenate or equivalent wood preservative before sealing with a bituminous sealer.

**General accessories**

2.4 FIXINGS, BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

Hot-dip galvanized steel or Stainless steel if the timber is CCA (preservative code 01 or 02) treated, refer to SELECTIONS.

Only stainless steel to be used if the timber is treated with; Copper Azole (CuAz, Preservative code 58), Alkaline Copper Quaternary (ACQ, Preservative code 90), Micronise Copper Azole (code 88) or Micronised Copper Quaternary (code 89).


© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026

## 3 EXECUTION

3.1 STORAGE

Take delivery of retaining wall elements in protected pallets, undamaged and dry. Store on level hard standings, protect from damage and keep dry until laid.

### Timber retaining walls

3.2 ERECT DRILLED TIMBER POLE WALLS

Excavate, drill to required depth, and set in concrete in pre-drilled holes, and erect planks; all in accordance with the pole wall manufacturer's requirements and standard details. Place poles butt end down. Install timber rails with staggered joints. All rail joints close butted at poles.

Set-out tolerances

| | |
|---|---|
| From pole centre line: | Maximum 60mm from centre line |
| Misalignment: | Maximum 20mm at retaining face |
| Minimum back slope: | 3 degrees back slope from vertical |
| Drill diameter: | Pole butt end diameter + 100mm |
| Min concrete encasement: | 25mm over the timber pole |

### Ground water drainage

3.3 GROUND WATER DRAINAGE

For retaining wall drainage and backfill refer to 7430 DRAINAGE.

### Completion

3.4 TAKE AWAY

Take away from the site plant and material not used.



© CIL Masterspec Nov 2026